This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T 918.06.120

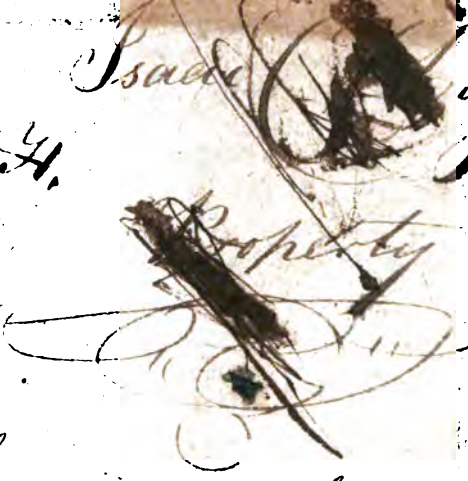
3 2044 097 065 916

Harvard College Library

FROM

John S. West,
Tiverton, R. I.

7 Sept. 1888.



Hic est meus liber

Joseph Usher Parsons

THE

RUDIMENTS

OF

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D.

Rector of the High School of Edinburgh.

THIRD AMERICAN EDITION, ABRIDGED FROM THE THIRD EDINBURGH EDITION.

RECOMMENDED BY THE PRESIDENT AND TRUSTEES OF WILLIAMS' COLLEGE, TO BE USED BY THOSE WHO ARE INTENDED FOR THAT SEMINARY.

Published according to Act of Congress.

TROY:

PRINTED BY O. PENNIMAN & CO. AND SOLD BY THEM AT THE TROY BOOKSTORE.

1806.

Educ 918.06.120
~~5253.15.2~~
Educ T 918.06
HARVARD COLLEGE
SEP 7 1888
LIBRARY.

John S. Yost,
Riverton, R. I.

Extracts from the Author's Advertisement.

THE materials of this Grammar are collected from the beſt Grammarians, chiefly from Mr. Ruddiman. In this edition there are ſeveral improvements: The *Syntax* is greatly enlarged, by the addition of many uſeful obſervations and examples; and particularly by a full explanation of the different meaning and conſtruction of Verbs and Prepoſitions, and of thoſe phraſes which occaſion moſt difficulty to learners, collected from the Claſſics, and from the beſt writers on Latinity.

By the natural diviſion of words and ſentences into Simple and Compound, no rule or example is introduced in Syntax or Proſody, till the learner is properly prepared, by what goes before, to underſtand it; which is not the caſe in the Latin Grammars commonly uſed: where, not to mention other inſtances, the conſtruction of the Relative, which requires a previous acquaintance with moſt of the other rules of conſtruction, is placed near the beginning of the *Syntax*: and, what appears ſtill more prepoſterous, in Proſody, the rules concerning the quantity of compounds are placed before thoſe concerning the quantity of ſimple words. Theſe improprieties in arrangement occaſion great inconvenience to learners than is generally imagined.

After the Syntax, there is a brief account and explanation of the various *Tropes* and *Figures* of words and of thought, which occur in the Claſſics, compiled from the moſt approved authors, chiefly from *Quinctilian*, and *Marſais ſur les Tropes*.

The greateſt care has every where been taken, to make the tranſlation of Latin words and phraſes ſubſervient to the knowledge of Engliſh. Theſe, and ſeveral other particulars not mentioned, it is hoped, will be found to be improvements of ſome importance in the plan of education.

A conſonant cannot make a perfect ſound without a vowel; as, *b*, *d*.

A vowel is properly called a *ſimple ſound*; and the ſounds formed by the concourſe of vowels and conſonants, *articulate ſounds*.

Conſonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Conſonants*.

A mute is ſo called, becauſe it entirely ſtops the paſſage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p*, *b*; *t*, *d*; *c*, *k*, *q*, and *g*: but *b*, *d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A ſemi-vowel, or half-vowel, does not entirely ſtop the paſſage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The ſemi-vowels are, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *f*. The firſt four of theſe are alſo called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; becauſe they flow ſoftly and eaſily after a mute in the ſame ſyllable; as, *bla*, *ſtra*.

The mutes and ſemi-vowels may be thus diſtinguiſhed. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe*, *be*, &c.: but in naming the ſemi-vowels, the vowel is put before them: as, *el*, *em*, &c.

The double conſonants are *x*, *z*, and *j*. *X* is made up of *cs*, *ks*, or *gs*. *Z* ſeems not to be a double conſonant in Engliſh. It has the ſame relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being ſounded ſomewhat more ſoftly.

In Latin, *z*, and likewiſe *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

Y in Engliſh is ſometimes a conſonant, as in *youth*.

H by ſome is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A Diphthong is two vowels joined in one ſound.

If the ſound of both vowels be diſtinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To theſe, ſome, not improperly, add other three, namely,

æi; as in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*: and *ui*, as in *Harpuia*, or in *cui* and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as *aetas*, or *ætas*; *oe*, or *œ*; as, *poena*, or *pœna*; in both which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *suadeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-utor*, *in-ers*, *propter-ea*, *et-enim*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb; as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *wil-ling*, &c.

Observe, A long syllable is thus marked [-]; as, *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent thus, [^]; as, *amâris*. A short syllable is marked thus [˘]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

A word is one or more syllables joined together, which men have agreed upon to signify something.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus, in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive*, or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ego*, I; *doceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word, and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dedoceo*, I unteach; *egomet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *doceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as *pietas*, piety; *doctrina*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; 1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; declined: 2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction*; undeclined.

Declinable parts of speech are those which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were ſaid to be declined. But *Declenſion* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The Engliſh language has one part of ſpeech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may ſignify, either, *a ſon of a king*, or *a king's ſon*; or *the ſon of the king*, or *the king's ſon*.

NOUN.

A noun is either ſubſtantive or adjective.

The adjective ſeems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word *added to* a ſubſtantive or noun, expreſſive of its quality; and therefore ſhould be conſidered as a different part of ſpeech. But as the ſubſtantive and adjective together expreſs but one object, and in Latin are declined after the ſame manner, they have both been comprehended under the ſame general name.

SUBSTANTIVE.

(A Subſtantive, or Noun, is the name of any perſon, place, or thing; as, *boy, ſchool, book.*)

Subſtantives are of two ſorts; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of perſons and places: ſuch are, *Cæſar, Rome.*

Common names ſtand for whole kinds, containing ſeveral ſorts; or for ſorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man.*

Every particular being ſhould have its own proper name; but this is impoſſible, on account of their innumerable multitude: men have therefore been obliged to give the ſame common name to ſuch things as agree together in certain reſpects. Theſe form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *ſpecies*, or ſort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*The* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness*, *goodness*, *whiteness*, *virtue*, *justice*, *piety*, &c.

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*, that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connections or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive: in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, *or* the king; *regis*, of a king, or of the king.

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders*, *Cases*, and *Numbers*.

There are three genders, *Masculine*, *Feminine* and *Neuter*.

The cases are six, *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, *and Ablative*.

There are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *firſt*, *ſecond*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth Declenſions*.

Caſes are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to expreſs the relation of one thing to another. They are ſo called, from *cado*, to fall; becauſe they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore named *caſus rectus*, the ſtraight caſe; and the other caſes, *caſus obliqui*, the oblique caſes.

The different declenſions may be diſtinguiſhed from one another by the termination of the genitive ſingular. The firſt declenſion has *æ* diphthong; the ſecond has *i*; the third has *is*; the fourth has *ûs*; and the fifth has *ĕi* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be ſaid to have ſix caſes, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the ſingular and plural.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accuſative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and theſe caſes in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the moſt part in the ſingular, and always in the plural, is the ſame with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally loſe *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma; Anchīſes, Anchiſe; Paris, Pari; Panthus, Panthu; Pallas, -antis, Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declenſion oftener retain the *s*; as, *ô Achilles*, or *-e*; *O Socrates, or -e*: and ſometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais, Myſis, Pallas, -adis*, the goddeſs Minerva, &c.

(4. Proper names for the moſt part want the plural:)

Unleſs ſeveral of the ſame name be ſpoken of; as, *duodecim Cæſares*, the twelve Cæſars.

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are ſaid to be of different genders, not merely from the diſtinction of ſex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is ſaid to be feminine, becauſe it is always joined with an adjective in that termination, which is applied to females; as, *bona penna*, a good pen, and not *bonus penna*.

The gender of nouns which ſignify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declenſion.

To diſtinguiſh the different genders, grammarians make uſe of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the maſculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES CONCERNING GENDER.

(1. Names of males are maſculine;) as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pater*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

(2. Names of females are feminine;) as, *Helĕna*, Helen; *mulier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *mater*, a mother; *ſoror*, a ſiſter; *Tellus*, the Goddeſs of the earth.

(3. Nouns which ſignify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either maſculine or feminine;) as,

Hic *bos*, an ox; hæc *bos*, a cow; hic *parens*, a father; hæc *parens*, a mother.

The following liſt comprehends moſt nouns of the common gender.

Adŏleſcens, } *a young man*, or
Juvĕnis, } *woman.*
Affĭnis, *a relation by marriage.*
Conjux, *a huſband* or *wife.*
Convīva, *a gueſt.*
Cuſtos, *a keeper.*
Dux, *a leader.*
Nemo, *no body.*
Obſes, *an hoſtage.*
Patruēlis, *a couſin-german, by the father's*
Præs, a ſurety, [*ſide*

Antiſtes, *a prelate.*
Auctor, *an author.*
Augur, *a ſoothſayer.*
Canis, *a dog* or *bitch.*
Civis, *a citizen.*
Cliens, *a client.*
Comes, *a companion.*
Hæres, *an heir.*
Hoſtis, *an enemy.*
Infans, *an infant.*
Interpres, *an interpreter.*
Judex, *a judge.*
Martyr, *a martyr.*
Miles, *a ſoldier.*
Municeps, *a burgeſs.*
Princeps, *a prince* or *princeſs.*
Sacerdos, *a prieſt* or *prieſtſs.*
Sus, *a ſwine.*
Teſtis, *a witneſs.*
Vates, *a prophet.*
Vindex, *an avenger.*

But *antiſtes*, *cliens*, and *hoſpes*, alſo change their termination to expreſs the feminine, thus, *antiſtita*, *clienta*, *hoſpĭta*: in the ſame manner with *leo*, a lion; *leæna*, a lioneſs; *equus*, *equa*; *mulus*, *mula*; and many others.

There are ſeveral nouns, which, though applicable to both ſexes, admit only of a maſculine adjective; as, *advĕna*, a ſtranger; *agricŏla*, a huſbandman; *aſſecla*, an attendant; *accŏla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *opĭfex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to perſons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *ſcortum*, a courteſan; *mancipium*, *ſervitium*, a ſlave, &c.

In like manner *operæ*, workmen; *vigiliæ*, *excubiæ*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty perſons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beaſts, birds, fiſhes, and inſects, in which the diſtinction of ſex is either not eaſily diſcerned, or ſeldom attended to. Thus, *paſſer*, a ſparrow, is maſculine, becauſe nouns in *er* are maſculine; ſo *aquila*, an eagle, is feminine, becauſe nouns in *a* of the firſt declenſion are feminine. Theſe are called *Epicene* or promiſcuous nouns. When any particular ſex is marked, we uſually add the word *mas* or *fœmina*, as, *mas paſſer*, a male ſparrow; *fœmina paſſer*, a female ſparrow.

OBS. 2. A proper name, for the moſt part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended;

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine, because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, hic *Aprīlis*, April; hic *Aquĭlo*, the north wind; *Africus*, the south-west wind; hic *Tĭbĕris*, the river Tiber; hic *Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, hæc *Matrŏna*, the river Marne in France; hæc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; hoc *Soracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *regio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *navis*, are feminine; as, hæc *Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Samos*, an island of that name; *Corinthus*, the city Corinth; *pomus*, an apple tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems, hæc *Ilias*, *-ădos*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; hæc *Ænēis*, *-ĭdos*, a poem of Virgil's; hæc *Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name: hic *Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Pessinus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; hæc *Persis*, *-ĭdis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, *-ĭnis*, the city Carthage; hoc *Albion*, Britain; hoc *Cære*, *Reate*, *Prænestе*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelida Prænestе*, Juv. *Ilion defensa*, Ovid.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *-tri*, a wild olive tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cytĭsus*, a kind of shrub; *rubus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch tree; *lotus*, the lot-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *suber -ĕris*, the cork-tree; *siler -ĕris*, the osier; *robur -ŏris*, oak of the hardest kind; *acer -ĕris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercētum*, *esculētum*, *salĭcum*, *frutice-*

tum, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, ſhrubs, &c. grow: Alſo the names of fruits and timber; as, *pomum*, or *malum*, an apple; *pirum*, a pear; *ebĕnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

OBS. 3. Several nouns are ſaid to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are ſometimes found in one gender, and ſometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, maſculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, maſculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the firſt declenſion end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*. Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different caſes are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *æ* diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *â*: Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ*; Gen. *ārum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*; Thus,

Penna, *a pen, fem.*

Singular.		*Plural.*		*Terminations.*
N. penna,	*a pen*;	*N.* pennæ,	*pens*;	*a, æ,*
G. pennæ,	*of a pen*;	*G.* pennārum,	*of pens*;	*æ, arum,*
D. pennæ,	*to a pen*;	*D.* pennis,	*to pens*;	*æ, is,*
A. pennam,	*a pen*;	*A.* pennas,	*pens*:	*am, as,*
V. penna,	*O pen*;	*V.* pennæ,	*O pens*;	*a, æ,*
A. pennâ,	*with a pen*;	*A.* pennis,	*with pens.*	*a, is.*

EXCEPTIONS.

EXC. 1. The following nouns are maſculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic ſea; *comēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and ſometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dama*, a fallow-deer. *Paſcha*, the paſſover, is neuter.

EXC. 2. The ancient Latins ſometimes formed the genitive ſingular in *āi*: thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*: and ſometimes likewiſe in *as*; which form the compounds of *familia* uſually retain; as, *mater-familias*, the miſtreſs of a family; genit. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

Anĭma, *the soul.*	Filia, & Nata, *a daughter.*
Dea, *a goddess.*	Liberta, *a freed-woman.*
Equa, *a mare.*	Mula, *a she-mule.*
Famula, *a female servant.*	

Thus *deābus, filiābus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, Æneas, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēæ*; dat. *-æ*; acc. *-am* or *-an*; voc. *-ā*; abl. *-ā*. So *Boreas*, *-eæ*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry often *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as, *Ossa*, *-am*, or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

Anchīses, *Anchises, the name of a man.*

Singular.

Nom. Anchises,	*Acc.* Anchisen,
Gen. Anchisæ,	*Voc.* Anchise,
Dat. Anchisæ,	*Abl.* Anchise,

Penelŏpe, *Penelope, the name of a woman.*

Singular.

Nom. Penelope,	*Acc.* Penelopen,
Gen. Penelopes,	*Voc.* Penelope,
Dat. Penelope,	*Abl.* Penelope.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrīda*, for *Atrides*; *Persa*, for *Perses*, a Per-

tian; *Geometra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician; *Clin-*, for *Cli-ce*; *Epitŏma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *Grammatica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhetorĭca*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinic*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *is* is found sometimes in *em*.

NOTE. We sometimes find the genit. plur. contracted; as, *Cælicŏlûm*, for *Cælicolarum*; *Ænĕādûm*, for *-arum*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*.) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

Gener, *a son-in-law*, *masc.*

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Terminations.*
Nom. gener,	*Nom.* genĕri,	*er*, *ir*, *us*, *i*,
Gen. genĕri,	*Gen.* generōrum,	*i*, *orum*,
Dat. genero,	*Dat.* generis,	*o*, *is*,
Acc. generum,	*Acc.* generos,	*um*, *os*,
Voc. gener,	*Voc.* generi,	*er*, *ir*, *e*, *i*,
Abl. generō.	*Abl.* generis.	*o*, *is*.

After the same manner decline *socer*, *-ĕri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-ĕri*, a boy: So *Furĭfer*, a villain; *Lucĭfer*, the morning star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armĭger*, an armour bearer; *presbўter*, an elder; *Mulcĭber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *Iber*, *-ĕri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er*, which has the genit. long, and its compound *Celtĭber*, *-ĕri*: Also, *vir*, *viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *Levir*, a brother-in-law; *Semĭvir*, *decemvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *Satur*, *-ŭri*, full, (of old *saturus*,) an adjective.

But moſt nouns in *er* loſe the *e* in the genitive; as,

Ager, *a field*, *maſc.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. ager,	*Nom.* agri,
Gen. agri,	*Gen.* agrōrum,
Dat. agro,	*Dat.* agris.
Acc. agrum,	*Acc.* agros,
Voc. ager,	*Voc.* agri,
Abl. agro.	*Abl.* agris.

In like manner decline,

Aper, *a wild-boar.*
Arbĭter, *a judge.*
Auſter, *the ſouth-wind.*
Cancer, *a crab-fiſh.*
Caper, *an he-goat.*
Colŭber, *a ſerpent.*
Culter, *the coulter of a plough, a knife.*
Faber, *a workman.*
Magiſter, *a maſter.*
Miniſter, *a ſervant.*
Onăger, *a wild aſs.*
Scalper, *a lancet.*

Alſo *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*: but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the God of wine, have *libĕri*. So likewiſe proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Menander*, *Teucer*, *Meleāger*, &c. gen, *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

Domĭnus, *a lord*, *maſc.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. dominus,	*Nom.* domini,
Gen. domini	*Gen.* dominōrum,
Dat. domino,	*Dat.* dominis,
Acc. dominum,	*Acc.* dominos,
Voc. domine,	*Voc.* domini,
Abl. domino.	*Abl.* dominis.

Regnum, *a kingdom*, *neut.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. regnum,	*Nom.* regna,
Gen. regni,	*Gen.* regnōrum,
Dat. regno,	*Dat.* regnis,
Acc. regnum,	*Acc.* regna,
Voc. regnum,	*Voc.* regna.
Abl. regno.	*Abl.* regnis.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

(Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine; *humus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.)

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*:

Abyssus, *a bottomless pit.*	Dialectus, *a dialect*, or *manner of speech.*	Methŏdus, *a method.*
Antidŏtus, *a preservative against poison.*	Diametros, *the diameter of a circle.*	Periŏdus, *a period.*
Arctos, *one of the constellations.*	Diphthongus, *a diphthong.*	Perimetros, *the circumference,*
Carbăsus, *a sail.*	Erēmus, *a desert.*	Pharus, *a watch-tower.*
		Synŏdus, *an assembly.*

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

Amethystus, *an amethyst.*	Sappīrus, *a sapphire.*	Byssus, *fine flax* or *linen.*
Chrysolīthus, *a chrysolyte.*	Topazius, *a topaz.*	Costus, *costmary.*
Chrysophrăsus, *a kind of topaz.*	Biblus, Papȳrus, *an Egyptian reed of which paper was made.*	Crocus, *saffron.*
		Hyssōpus, *hyssop.*
		Narcus, *spikenard.*
Crystallus, *crystal.*		
Leucochrȳsus, *a jacinth.*		

Other names of jewels are generally masculine: as, *Beryllus*, the beryl; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *Pyrōpus*, a ruby; *Smaragdus*, an emerald: And also names of plants; as *Asparăgus*, asparagus, *or* sparrowgrass; *ellebŏrus*, ellebore; *raphănus*, radish *or* colewort; *intȳbus*, endive *or* succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow, are either masculine or feminine:

Atŏmus, *an atom.*	Barbĭtus, *a harp.*	Grossus, *a green fig.*
Balănus, *the fruit of the palm-tree.*	Camēlus, *a camel.*	Penus, *a store-house,*
	Colus, *a distaff.*	Phaselus, *a little ship.*

Exc. 3. *Virus*, poison; *pelăgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

(Proper names in *ius*-lose *us* in the vocative) as, *Horatius, Horāti*; *Virgilius, Virgĭli*; *Georgius, Georgi*, names of men: *Larius, Lari*; *Mincius, Minci*; names of

lakes. *Filius*, a son, also hath *fili*; *genius*, one's guardian angel, *genii*; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus* in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dei* and *deis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus* in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tabellarius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Delius*, *Delie*; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthie*; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the voc. of nouns in *us* like the nom. as, *flavius*, *Latinus*, for *flavie*, *Latine*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely. Thus, *Audi tu populus*, for *populе*. Liv.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us*; as, *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, voc. *Evander*, or *Evandre*: So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c. and so anciently *puer* in the voc. had *pŭere* from *pŭerus*.

Note. When the gen. sing. ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tugŭri*, for *tugurii*; *ingĕni*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the gen. plur. we find *deŭm*, *liberŭm*, *fabrŭm*, *duumvirŭm*, &c. for *deorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrŭm*, *Graiŭm*, *Argivŭm*, *Danaŭm*, *Pelasgŭm*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and on are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *Ilion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um* by the Latins; as, *Alphēus*, *Ilium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ĕus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphĕus*, gen. *Orphĕi*, *Orphei* or *Orphi*. So *Thesĕus*, *Promethĕus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when the *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the gen. sing. in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeo*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third decl. thus, nom. *Androgeo*, gen. *Androgeōnis*: So *Atho* or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the gen. in *u*; as, *Menandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Menandri*, *Apollodori*. Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the acc. in *um* or *on*; as *Delus* or *Delos*, acc. *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the gen. plur. in *ŏn*; as, *Georgĭca*, gen. plur. *Georgĭcōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of

all the other declenſions together. The number of its final ſyllables is not aſcertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of theſe, eight are peculiar to this declenſion, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the firſt declenſion; *n* and *r*, with the ſecond; and *s* with all the other declenſions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different caſes are theſe: nom. ſing. *a*, *e*, &c.; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the ſame with the nominative*; abl. *e*, or *i*: nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es*, *a*, or *ia*; gen. *um*, or *ium*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; thus,

Sermo, *ſpeech, maſc.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. ſermo,	*N.* ſermōnes,
G. ſermōnis,	*G.* ſermōnum,
D. ſermoni,	*D.* ſermonĭbus,
A. ſermonem,	*A.* ſermones,
V. ſermo,	*V.* ſermones,
A. ſermone.	*A.* ſermonibus.

Rupes, *a rock, fem.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. rupes,	*N.* rupes,
G. rupis,	*G.* rupium,
D. rupi,	*D.* rupibus,
A. rupem,	*A.* rupes,
V. rupes,	*V.* rupes,
A. rupe.	*A.* rupibus.

Lapis, *a ſtone, maſc.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. lapis,	*N.* lapĭdes,
G. lapĭdis,	*G.* lapidum,
D. lapidi,	*D.* lapĭdĭbus,
A. lapidem,	*A.* lapides,
V. lapis,	*V.* lapides,
A. lapide.	*A.* lapidibus.

Caput, *the head, neut.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. caput,	*N.* capĭta,
G. capĭtis,	*G.* capitum,
D. capiti,	*D.* capitĭbus,
A. caput,	*A.* capita,
V. caput,	*V.* capita,
A. capite.	*A.* capitibus.

Sedile, *a ſeat, neut.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. ſedile,	*N.* ſedilia,
G. ſedilis,	*G.* ſedilium,
D. ſedili,	*D.* ſedilĭbus,
A. ſedile,	*A.* ſedilia,
V. ſedile,	*V.* ſedilia,
A. ſedili.	*A.* ſedilibus.

Iter, *a journey, neut.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. iter,	*N.* itinĕra,
G. itinĕris,	*G.* itinerum,
D. itineri,	*D.* itinĕribus,
A. iter,	*A.* itinera,
V. iter,	*V.* itinera,
A. itinere.	*A.* itineribus.

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declenſion.

A, *E*, *I*, and *Y*.

1. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ătis*; as, *diadēma, diadēmătis*, a crown; *dogma, -ătis*, an opinion. So,

Ænigma, *a riddle.*	Phasma, *an apparition.*	Stratagēma, *an artful contrivance.*
Arōma, *sweet spices.*	Poēma, *a poem.*	
Apothegma, *a short pithy saying.*	Schema, *a scheme* or *figure.*	Thēma, *a theme, a subject to write* or *speak on.*
Axiōma, *a plain truth.*	Sophisma, *a deceitful argument.*	Toreuma, *a carved vessel.*
Diplōma, *a charter.*		
Epigramma, *an inscription.*	Stemma, *a pedigree.*	
Numisma, *a coin.*	Stigma, *a mark* or *brand, a disgrace.*	

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rete, retis*, a net.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,

sermo, sermōnis, speech; *drāco, dracōnis*, a dragon.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *ratio, rationis*, reason. But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curculio, *the throat pipe, the weasand.*	Scorpio, *a scorpion.*	Vespertilio, *a bat.*
	Septentrio, *the north.*	Ternio, *the number three.*
Papilio, *a butterfly.*	Stellio, *a lizard.*	
Pugio, *a dagger.*	Titio, *a firebrand.*	Quaternio, —— *four.*
Scipio, *a staff.*	Unio, *a pearl.*	Senio, — —— *six.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭnis*; as, *arundo, arundĭnis*, a reed; *imāgo, imagĭnis*, an image. But the following are masculine:

Cardo, -ĭnis, *a hinge.*	Margo, -ĭnis, *the brink of a river*; also fem.
Cudo, -ōnis, *a leather cap.*	
Harpăgo, -ōnis, *a drag.*	Ordo, -ĭnis, *order.*
Ligo, -ōnis, *a spade.*	Tendo, -ĭnis, *a tendon.*
	Udo, -ōnis, *a linen* or *woolen sock.*

Cupīdo, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always feminine.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *ĭnis*:

Apollo, -ĭnis, *the god Apollo.*	Nemo, -ĭnis, m. or f. *no body.*
Homo, -ĭnis, *a man* or *woman.*	Turbo, -ĭnis, m. *a whirlwind.*

Caro, flesh, fem. has, *carnis*: *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis*: *Nerio, Neriōnis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the ob-

solete nominatives *Anien, Nerien.* *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *ōnis.*

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman; gen. *Didûs;* dat. *Didô*, *&c.* Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido, Didōnis:* so *echo, -ûs*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo, -ûs*, the name of a ship; *halo, -onis*, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is;* as,

animal, animālis, a living creature; *halec, halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervĭcal, *a bolster.* Minerval, *entry-money.* Puteal, *a well-cover.*
Cubĭtal, *a cushion.* Minūtal, *minced meat.* Vectīgal, *a tax.*
Except. Fel, fellis, n. *gall.* Sal, sălis, m. or n. *salt.*
Lac, lactis, n. *milk.* Sāles, -ium, pl. m. *witty sayings.*
Mel, mellis, n. *honey.* Sol, sōlis, m. *the sun.*
Mugil, ĭlis, m. *a mullet-fish.*

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is;* as, *David, Davĭdis.*

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *ĭnis;* as, *flumen, flumĭnis*, a river.

The following nouns are likewise neuter:

Gluten, -ĭnis, *glue.* Inguen, -ĭnis, *the groin.*
Unguen, -ĭnis, *ointment.* Pollen, -ĭnis, *fine flour.*

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *ĭnis; pecten*, a comb; *tubĭcen*, a trumpeter; *tibīcen*, a piper; and *oscen*, v. *oscĭnis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine: *Sindon, -ŏnis*, fine linen; *ædon, -ŏnis*, a nightingale; *Halcyon, -ŏnis*, a bird called the King's fisher; *icon, -ŏnis*, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laomĕdon, -ontis*, a king of Troy. So *Achĕron, Chamæleon, Phaëthon, Charon*, &c.

AR and *UR*.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as,

calcar, calcāris, a spur; *murmur, murmŭris*, a noise.

Except. Ebur, -ŏris, n. *ivory.*
Far, farris, n. *corn.*
Femur, -ŏris, n. *the thigh.*
Furfur, -ŭris, m. *bran.*
Fur, fūris, m. *a thief.*
Hepar, -ătis, *or* -ătos, n. *the liver.*
Jecur, -ŏris, *or* jecĭnŏris, n. *the liver.*
Robur, -ŏris, n. *strength.*
Salar, -aris, m. *a trout.*
Turtur, -ŭris, m. *a turtle-dove.*
Vultur, -ŭris, m. *a vulture.*

ER and *OR*.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

anser, anseris, a goose; *agger, -ĕris*, a rampart; *aer, -ĕris*, the air; *carcer, -ĕris*, a prison; *asser, -ĕris*, a plank; *dolor, -ōris*, pain; *cŏlor, -ōris*, a colour.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter:

Ador, -ŏris, *fine wheat.*
Æquor, -ŏris, *a plain, the sea.*
Cadāver, -ĕris, *a dead carcase.*
Cicer, -ĕris, *vetches.*
Cor, cordis, *the heart.*
Iter, itinĕris, *a journey.*
Marmor, -ŏris, *marble.*
Papāver, -ĕris, *poppy.*
Piper, -ĕris, *pepper.*
Spinther, -ĕris, *a clasp.*
Tuber, -ĕris, *a swelling.*
Uber, -ĕris, *a pap*, or *fatness.*
Ver, vēris, *the spring.*

Arbor, -ŏris, a tree, is fem. *Tuber, -ĕris*, the fruit of the tuber tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive; as, *imber, imbris*, a shower. So *Insŭber, Octŏber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter, ventris*, the belly; *pater, patris*, a father; *frater, -tris*, a brother; *accipiter, -tris*, a hawk; but *crater*, a cup, has *cratēris*; *soter, -ēris*, a saviour; *later*, a tile, *latĕris*; *Jupiter*, the chief of the Heathen gods, has *Jŏvis*; *linter, -tris*, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

A S.

(7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis ;* as *ætas, ætātis*, an age.)

Except. 1. As, assis, m. *a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.* Mas, măris, m. *a male.* Vas vădis, m. *a surety.* Vas vāsis, n. *a vessel.*

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; as *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans* 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans* or *decussis*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; and some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gigas, gigantis*, a giant; *adamas, -antis*, an adamant; *elĕphas, -antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *ădis*, or *ădos*; as, *lampas, lampădis*, or *lampădos*, a lamp; *dromas, -ădis*, f. a dromedary: likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcădis*, or *-ădos*. Those that are neuter have *ātis*; as, *bucĕras, -ātis*, an herb; *artocreas, -ātis*, a pie.

E S.

(8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is ;*) as,

rupes, rupis, a rock; *nubes, nubis*, a cloud.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive;

Aleş, -ĭtis, *a bird.*
Ames, -ĭtis, *a fowler's staff.*
Aries, -ĕtis, *a ram.*
Bes, bessis, *two thirds of a pound.*
Cespes, -ĭtis, *a turf.*
Eques, -ĭtis, *a horseman.*
Fomes, -ĭtis, *fewel.*
Gurges, -ĭtis, *a whirlpool.*
Heres, -ēdis, *an heir.*
Indiges, -ĕtis, *a man deified.*
Interpres, -ĕtis, *an interpreter.*
Limes, -ĭtis, *a limit or bound.*
Miles, -ĭtis, *a soldier.*
Obses, -ĭdis, *a hostage.*
Palmes, -ĭtis, *a vine-branch.*
Paries, -ĕtis, *a wall.*
Pes, pĕdis, *the foot.*
Pedes, -ĭtis, *a footman.*
Poples, -ĭtis, *the ham of the leg.*
Præses, -ĭdis, *a president.*
Satelles, -ĭtis, *a lifeguard.*
Stipes, -ĭtis, *the stock of a tree.*
Termes, -ĭtis, *an olive bough.*
Trames, -ĭtis, *a path.*
Veles, -ĭtis, *a light-armed soldier.*
Vates, vātis, *a prophet.*
Verres, verris, *a boar pig.*

But *ales*, *miles*, *heres*, *interpres*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Abies, -ĕtis, *a fir-tree.*
Ceres, -ĕris, *the goddess of corn.*
Merces, -ēdis, *a reward, hire.*
Merges, -ĭtis, *a handful of corn.*
Quies, -ētis, *rest.*
Requies, -ētis; *or* requiēi, *(of the fifth declension,) rest.*
Seges, -ĕtis, *growing corn.*
Teges, -ĕtis, *a mat* or *coverlet.*
Tudes, -is, *or* -ĭtis, *a hammer.*

To these add the following adjectives:

Ales, -ĭtis, *swift.*
Bipes, -ĕdis, *two-footed.*
Deses, -ĭdis, *slothful.*
Dives, -ĭtis, *rich.*
Hebes, -ĕtis, *dull.*
Perpes, -ĕtis, *perpetual.*
Præpes, -ĕtis, *swift-winged.*
Reses, -ĭdis, *idle.*
Sospes, -itis, *safe.*
Superstes, -ĭtis, *surviving.*
Teres, -ĕtis, *round and long, smooth.*
Locuples, -ētis, *rich.*
Mansues, -ētis, *gentle.*

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as, hic *acinăces*, *-is*, a Persian sword, a scimetar: but some are neuter; as, hoc *cacoēthes*, an evil custom, *hippomănes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *panăces*, the herb all-heal; *nepenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis* in the genitive, as, hic *magnes*, *magnētis*, a loadstone; *tapes*, *-ētis*, tapestry; *lebes*, *-ētis*, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is*; as, *Dares*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Achilles*, has *Achillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei*, of the second decl. from *Achillēus*: So *Ulysses*, *Pericles*, *Xerxes*, *Aristotēles*, &c.

I S.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as, *auris*, *auris*, the ear; *avis*, *avis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Axis, axis, *an axle-tree.*
Aquālis, *a water-pot, an ewer.*
Callis, *a beaten rod.*
Caulis, *the stalk of an herb.*
Collis, *a hill.*
Cenchris, *a kind of serpent.*
Ensis, *a sword.*
Fascis, *a bundle.*
Fecialis, *a herald.*
Follis, *a pair of bellows.*
Fustis, *a staff.*
Mensis, *a month.*
Mugilis, *or* -il, *a mullet-fish.*
Orbis, *a circle, the world.*
Patruelis, *a cousin-german.*
Piscis, *a fish.*
Postis, *a post.*
Sodālis, *a companion.*
Torris, *a fire-brand.*
Unguis, *the nail.*
Vectis, *a lever.*
Vermis, *a worm.*

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *panis*, bread; *crinis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *funis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭdis*; as, *tyrannis, tyrannĭdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cinis, -ĕris, *ashes.*
Cucŭmis, -is *or* -ĕris, *a cucumber.*
Dis, dītis, *the god of riches,* or *rich,* an adj.
Glis, glīris, *a rat.*
Impubis, *or* impubes, -is, *or* -ĕris, *not marriageable.*
Lapis, -ĭdis, *a stone.*
Pubis *or* pubes, -is, *or oftener* -ĕris, *marriageable.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *dust.*
Quiris, -ītis, *a Roman.*
Samnis, -ītis, *a Samnite.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Semis, -issis, *the half of any thing.*
Vomis, *or* -er, -ĕris, *a ploughshare.*

Samnis and *Quiris*, *pubis* and *impubis*, from the nature of their signification, may also be feminine, being properly adjectives. *Pulvis* and *cinis* are likewise sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adj. has *exsanguis* in the gen.

Exc. 3. The following are either masc. or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Amnis, *a river.*
Anguis, *a snake.*
Canālis, *a conduit-pipe.*
Clunis, *the buttock.*
Corbis, *a basket.*
Finis, *the end:* fines, *the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc.*
Scrobis, *or* scrobs, a *ditch.*
Torquis, *a chain.*

Exc. 4. These feminines have *ĭdis*: *Cassis*, -ĭdis, a helmet; *cuspis*, -ĭdis, the point of a spear; *capis*, -ĭdis, a kind of cup; *promulsis*, -ĭdis, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis*, strife, f. has *lītis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: Some have *eos* or *ios*; as,

hærĕsis, -eos, or *-ies*, or *-is*, a hereſy; *baſis, -is*, f. the foot of a pillar; *phraſis*, a phraſe; *phthiſis*, a conſumption; *poĕſis*, poetry: *metropŏlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *ĭdis*, or *ĭdos*; as, *Paris, -ĭdis*, or *-ĭdos*, the name of a man; *aſpis, -ĭdis*, f. an aſp; *ephemĕris, -ĭdis*, f. a day-book; *Iris, -ĭdis*, f. the rainbow; *pyxis, -ĭdis*, f. a box. So, *Ægis*, the ſhield of Pallas; *canthăris*, a ſort of fly; *periſcĕlis*, a garter; *proboſcis*, an elephant's trunk; *pyrămis*, a pyramid; and *tigris*, a tiger, *-ĭdis*, ſeldom *tĭgris*: all fem. Part have *ĭdis*; as, *Pſophis, -ĭdis*, the name of a city: others have *ĭnis*; as, *Eleuſis, -ĭnis*, the name of a city: and ſome have *entis*; as, *Simois, Simoentis*, the name of a river. *Charis*, one of the graces, has *Charĭtis*.

O S.

10. Nouns in *os* are maſculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,

nepos, -ōtis, a grandchild; *ſacerdos, -ōtis*, a prieſt.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, *or* -or, -ŏris, *a tree.*
Cos, cōtis, *a whet-ſtone.*
Dos, dōtis, *a dowry.*
Eos, cōis, *the morning.*
Glos, glōris, *the huſband's ſiſter, or brother's wife.*

Exc. 2. The following maſculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, *a flower.*
Honos, *or* -or, -ōris, *honour.*
Labos, *or* -or, -ōris, *labour.*
Lepos, *or* -or, -ōris, *wit.*
Mos, mōris, *a cuſtom.*
Ros, rōris, *dew.*
Cuſtos, -ōdis, *a keeper*; alſo fem.
Heros, herōis, *a hero.*
Minos, -ōis, *a king of Crete.*
Tros, Trōis, *a Trojan.*
Bos, bŏvis, m. or f. *an ox* or *cow.*

Exc. 3. *Os, ŏſſis*, a bone; and *ōs, oris*, the mouth, neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis*; as, *heros, -ōis*, a hero, or great man: So, *Minos*, a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *thos*, a kind of wolf.

U S.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ŏris*; as,

pectus, pectŏris, the breaſt; *tempus, tempŏris*, time.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ĕris*.

Acus, *chaff.*	Munus, *a gift, or office.*	Scelus, *a crime.*
Funus, *a funeral.*	Olus, *pot-herbs.*	Sidus, *a star.*
Fœdus, *a covenant.*	Onus, *a burden.*	Vellus, *a fleece of wool.*
Genus, *a kind, or kindred.*	Opus, *a work.*	Viscus, *an entrail.*
Glomus, *a clew.*	Pondus, *a weight.*	Ulcus, *a sore.*
Latus, *the side.*	Rudus, *rubbish.*	Vulnus, *a wound.*

Thus, *acĕris, funĕris*, &c. *Glomus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glomi*, of the second declension. *Venus*, the goddess of love, and *vetus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ĕris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the gentive variously:

Incus, -ūdis, *an anvil.*	Salus, -ūtis, *safety.*
Palus, -ūdis, *a pool, or morass.*	Senectus, -ūtis, *old age.*
Pecus, *(not used)* -ŭdis, *a sheep.*	Servĭtus, -ūtis, *slavery.*
Subscus, -ūdis, *a dove-tail.*	Virtus, -ūtis, *virtue.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.*	Intercus, -ūtis, *an hydropsy.*
Juventus, -ūtis, *youth.*	

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive; as,

Crus, crūris, *the leg.*	Rus, rūris, *the country.*
Jus, jūris, *law or right*; also *broth.*	Thus, thūris, *frankincense.*
Pus, pūris, *the corrupt matter of any sore.*	So Mus, mūris, masc. *a mouse.*

Ligus, or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligŭris*; *lepus*, masc. a hare, *lepŏris*; *sus*, masc. or feminine a swine, *suis*: *grus*, masc. or feminine a crane, *gruis*.

O Ædipus, the name of a man, has *O Ædipŏdis*: sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *O Ædipi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ŏdis*; as, *tripus*, masc. a tripod, *tripŏdis*: but *lagōpus*, *-ōdis*, a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis*; as, *Trapezus, Trapezuntis*; *Opus, Opuntis*.

Y S.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all derived from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive, they have sometimes, *yis*, or *yos*; as, hæc *chelys, chelyis*, or *-yos*, a harp; *Capys, Capyis*, or *-yos*, the name of a man: sometimes they have *ydis*, or *ydos*; as, hæc *chlamys, chlamydis* or *chlamydos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ynis*, or *ynos*; as, *Trachys Trachynis*, or *Trachynos*, the name of a town.

Æ S, A U S, E U S.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

Æs, æris, n. *brass* or *money.* Laus, laudis, f. *praise.*
Fraus, fraudis, f. *fraud.* Præs, prædis, m. or f. *a surety.*

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names and have the genitive in *eos*: as, *Orpheus, Orpheos; Tereus, Tereos.* But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables; thus, *Orphĕus*, genit. *Orphĕi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orphî*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs, trăbis*, a beam; *scobs, scŏbis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hĭĕmis*, winter; *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips, stīpis*, alms; *pars, partis*, a part; *sors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, -tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chalys, -ўbis, *steel.* Merops, -ŏpis, *a wood-pecker.*
Dens, -tis, *a tooth.* Mons, -tis, *a mountain.*
Fons, -tis, *a well.* Pons, -tis, *a bridge.*
Gryps, gryphis, *a griffon.* Seps, sēpis, *a kind of serpent*; but,
Hydrops, -ōpis, *the dropsy.* Seps, sepis, *a hedge*, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine:

Adeps, adĭpis, *fatness.* Serpens, -tis, *a serpent.*
Rudens, -tis, *a cable.* Stirps, stirpis, *the root of a tree.*
Scrobs, scrŏbis, *a ditch.* Stirps, *an offspring*, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, hæc *forceps, forcĭpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -ĭpis*, a prince, or princess; *particeps, cĭpis*, a partaker: so likewise *cælebs, cælĭbis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *caput* have *cĭpĭtis*; as, *præceps, præcipĭtis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipĭtis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipĭtis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucŭpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, *the leaf of a tree.* Juglans, -dis, *a walnut.*
Glans, glandis, *an acorn.* Lens, lendis, *a nit.*

So, *librĭpens, libripendis*, a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*: as, *concors, concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vecors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens, euntis; quiens, queuntis; rediens, redeuntis; nequiens, nequeuntis;* but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *caput, capĭtis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sinciput, sincĭpĭtis*, the forehead; and *occĭput, -ĭtis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

vox, vōcis, the voice; *lux, lūcis*, light.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thorax, -ācis*, a breast-plate; *Corax, -ăcis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *ĕcis*; as, *pollex, -ĭcis*, the thumb.

Vervex, a wedder sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fænifex*, a mower of hay, *fænisĕcis*: *Rufex*, m. *ĕcis*, a vine branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Calix, -ĭcis, *a cup.*
Calyx, -ўcis, *the bud of a flower.*
Coccyx, -ўgis, *vel* -ўcis, *a cuckow.*
Fornix, -ĭcis, *a vault.*
Oryx, -ўcis, *a wild-goat.*
Phœnix, -ĭcis, *a bird so called.*
Tradux, -ŭcis, *a graff, or off-set of a vine*; also fem.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

Fornax, -ācis, *a furnace.*
Panax, -ăcis, *the herb all-heal.*
Smilax, -ăcis, *the herb rope-weed.*
Carex, -ĭcis, *a sedge.*
Climax, -ăcis, *a ladder.*
Forfex, -ĭcis, *a pair of scissars.*
Halex, -ēcis, *a herring.*
Supellex, supellectĭlis, *household furniture.*

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -cis, *the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal*; but calx, *lime, is always* fem.
Limax, -ācis, *a snail.*
Obex, -ĭcis, *a bolt or bar.*
Perdix, -ĭcis, *a partridge.*

Cortex, -ĭcis, *the bark of a tree.*
Hystrix, -ĭcis, *a porcupine.*
Imbrex, -ĭcis, *a gutter* or *roof tile.*
Lynx, -cis, *an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.*
Pumex, -ĭcis, *a pumice-stone.*
Rumex, -icis, *sorrel, an herb.*
Sandix, -icis, *a purple colour.*
Silex, -icis, *a flint.*
Varex, -icis, *a swoln vein.*

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Aquilex, -ĕgis, *a well-maker.*
Conjunx, *or* -ux, -ŭgis, *a husband* or *wife.*
Frux, *(not used)* frūgis, f. *corn.*
Grex, grĕgis, m. or f. *a flock.*
Lex, lēgis, f. *a law.*
Phalanx, -angis, f. *a phalanx.*
Remex, -igis, *a rower.*
Rex, rēgis, *a king.*
Nix, nīvis, f. *snow.*
Nox, noctis, f. *night.*
Senex, sĕnis, (an adj.) *old.*

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns: thus, *bombyx, bombȳcis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *onyx*, masc. or fem. *onȳchis*, a precious stone; and so *sardonyx*; *larynx, laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryx, Phrȳgis*, a Phrygian; *sphinx, -ngis*, a fabulous hag; *strix, -ĭgis*, f. a screechowl; *Styx, -ȳgis*, f. a river in hell; *Hylax, -ăcis*, the name of a dog; *Bibrax, Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriente leoni ex ore exculpere prædam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. Virg. for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im*:

Amussis, f. *a mason's rule.*
Buris, f. *the beam of a plough.*
Cannăbis, f. *hemp.*
Cucŭmis, m. *a cucumber.*
Gummis, f. *gum.*
Mephītis, f. *a damp or strong smell.*
Ravis, f. *hoarseness.*
Sinăpis, f. *mustard.*
Sitis, f. *thirst.*
Tussis, f. *the cough.*
Vis, f. *strength.*

To these add names of rivers, and some other proper names: as, *Tiberis, Tiberim*, the Tiber; *Syrtis*, f. *-im*, a quicksand. These sometimes make the accusative in *in*; as, *Batis, Serāpin*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

Clavis, f. *a key.*	Pelvis, f. *a baſon.*	Secūris, f. *an ax.*
Cutis, f. *the ſkin.*	Puppis, f. *the ſtern of a ſhip.*	Sementis, f. *a ſowing.*
Febris, f. *a fever.*	Reſtis, f. *a rope.*	Strīgilis, f. *a horſe-comb.*
Navis, f. *a ſhip.*		Turris, f. *a tower*, &c.

Thus *navem*, or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients ſaid *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *peſtim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accuſative variouſly:

1. Greek nouns, whoſe genitive increaſes in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a conſonant going before, have the accuſative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampădis*, or *lampădes*; *lampădem*, or *lampăda*. In like manner, theſe three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trōis*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *heros*, a hero; *Mīnos*, a king of Crete. The three following have only *a*: *Pan*, the god of ſhepherds; *æther*, the ſky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pāna*, *æthĕra*, *delphīna*.

2. Maſculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accuſative in *im* or *in*; ſometimes in *ĭdem*, never *ĭda*; as, *Paris*, *Parĭdis*, or *Parĭdos*; *Parim* or *Parin*, ſometimes *Parĭdem*, never *Parĭda*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increaſing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *ĭdem* or *ĭda*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elĭdis* or *Elĭdos*, *Elĭdem* or *Elĭda*; ſeldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner, feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem* or *ȳda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accuſative; as, *chlamys*, *-ȳdem*, or *-ȳda*, not *chlamyn*, a ſoldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether maſculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accuſative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphōſis*, *-eos*, or *-ios*, *metamorphōſim* or *-in*, a change: *Tethys*, *-yos*, or *-yis*; *Tethym*, or *-yn*; the name of a goddeſs.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accuſative in *ea*; as, *Theſeus*, *Theſea*.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *ſedīle*, *ſedīli*; *animal*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town; and the following neuters, in *ar*:

Far, farre, *corn.*
Hepar, -ătis, *the liver.*
Jubar, -ăre, *a sun-beam.*
Nectar, -ăre, *drink of the gods.*
Par, păre, *a match, a pair.*
Sal, săle, *salt.*

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi:* but *cannăbis, Bætis,* and *tigris,* have *e* or *i.*

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris, turre,* or *turri*; but *restis,* a rope; and *cutis,* the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *finis, supellex, vectis, pugil,* a champion; *mugil* or *mugilis: rus, occĭput:* Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini,* he lives at Carthage. So, *civis, classis, fors, imber, anguis, avis, postis, fustis, amnis,* and *ignis;* but these have oftener *e. Canalis* has only *i.* The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *æstati, cani, lapidi, ovi,* &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis, -i,* an halbert; *molāris, -i,* a millstone; *quadrirēmis, -i,* a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis, -i; December, -bri,* &c. But *rudis* a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *juvĕnis,* a young man, have only *e;* and likewise those ending in *il, x, ceps,* or *ns;* as,

Adolescens, *a young man.*
Infans, *an infant.*
Princeps, *a prince.*
Senex, *an old man.*
Torrens, *a brook.*
Vigil, *a watchman.*

Thus, *adolescente, infante, sene,* &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys,* which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys, Atye,* or *Aty,* the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es,* when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermones, rupes.*

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppes, puppeis,* or *puppis.*

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *capŭta, sedīlia.*

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative ſingular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *ſedile*, *ſedili*, *ſedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capĭte*, *capĭtum*.

Exc. 1. Monoſyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *măre*, *marium*; *vas*, a ſurety, *vădium*; but polyſyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a ſtate or city, *civitātum*, and ſometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increaſe in the genitive ſingular, have alſo *ium*; as, *hoſtis*, an enemy, *hoſtium*. So likewiſe nouns ending in two conſonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*: *parens*, *vates*, *panis*, *juvĕnis*, and *canis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative ſingular:

Caro, carnis, f. *fleſh.*
Cohors, -tis, f. *a company.*
Cor, cordis, n. *the heart.*
Cos, cōtis, f. *a bone or whetſtone.*
Dos, dōtis, f. *a dowry.*
Faux, faucis, f. *the jaws.*
Glis, glīris, m. *a rat.*
Lar, laris, m. *a houſehold-god.*
Linter, -tris, m. or f. *a little boat.*
Lis, litis, f. *ſtrife.*
Mus, mūris, m. *a mouſe.*
Nix, nĭvis, f. *ſnow.*
Nox, noctis, f. *the night.*
Os, ossis, n. *a bone.*
Quiris, -ītis, *a Roman.*
Samnis, -ītis, m. or f. *a Samnite.*
Uter, utris, m. *a bottle.*

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, *&c.* Alſo the compounds of *unica* and *as*; as, *ſeptunx*, ſeven ounces, *ſeptuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *bessium*. *Bos*, an ox or cow, has *boum*, and in the dative, *bōbus*, or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Macĕdo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *Monocĕros*, an unicorn; *Lynx*, a beaſt ſo called; *Thrax*, a Thracian: *Macedŏnum*, *Arăbum*, *Æthiŏpum*, *Monocerōtum*, *Lyncum*, *Thrăcum*. But thoſe which have *a* or *is* in the nominative ſingular, ſometimes form the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammătum*, or *epigrammatōn*, an epigram; *metamorphoſis*, *-ium*, or *-ōn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *manes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *cœlites*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *cœlitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* and *cœles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Sāturnalia*, the feast of Saturn, *Saturnaliorum*, and *Saturnaliorum*.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as, *nocentûm* for *nocentium*: and sometimes to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *cælĭtuum* for *cælĭtum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncŏpe*; and the latter by *Epenthĕsis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tĭbus*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poēmătis*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poēmătum*.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troăsi* or *Troăsin*, for *Troădibus*, from *Troas*, *Troădis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a* the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampădem*, or *lampăda*; *lampădes* or *lampădas*, So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *heroas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, f. *lampădis*, or *-ădos*; *-ădi*, *-ădem*, or *-ăda*; *-as*; *-ăde*: Plur. *-ădes*; *-ădum*; *-ădibus*; *-ădes*, or *-ădas*; *-ădes*; *-adibus*.

Troas, f. *Troădis*, or *-ădos*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*:
Pl. *Troădes*; *um*; *ĭbus*, *si* or *sin*; *es* or *as*; *es*; *ĭbus*.

Tros, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

Phillis, f. *Phillĭdis* or *-dos*, *di*, *dem* or *da*; *i*; *de*.

Paris, m. *Parĭdis* or *-dos*; *di*; *dem*, *Parim* or *in*; *i*; *de*.

Chlamys, f. *Chlamўdis* or *-ўdos*, *ўdi*, *ўdem* or *ўda*, *ys*, *ўde*, &c.

Capys, m. *Capўis*, or *-yos*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.

Metamorphoſis, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *em* or *in*, *i*, *i*, &c.
Orpheus, m. *eos*, *ĕi* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo* of the ſecond decl.
Dido, f. *Didûs* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declenſion end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are maſculine: nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the ſingular number.

The terminations of the caſes are; nom. ſing. *us*; gen. *ûs*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. *like the nom.*; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

Fructus, *fruit, maſc.*		Cornu, *a horn, neut.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
N. fructus,	*N.* fructus,	*N.* cornu,	*N.* cornua,
G. fructûs,	*G.* fructuum.	*G.* cornu,	*G.* cornuum.
D. fructui,	*D.* fructĭbus,	*D.* cornu,	*D.* cornĭbus,
A. fructum,	*A.* fructus,	*A.* cornu,	*A.* cornua.
V. fructus,	*V.* fructus,	*V.* cornu,	*V.* cornua,
A. fructu.	*A.* fructibus.	*A.* cornu.	*A.* cornibus.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine:

Acus, *a needle.*	Manus, *the hand.*	Specus, *a den.*
Domus, *a houſe.*	Penus, *a ſtorehouſe.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*
Ficus, *a fig.*	Portĭcus, *a gallery.*	

Penus and *ſpecus* are ſometimes maſ. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with ſeveral others, are alſo of the ſecond declenſion. *Capricornus*, m. the ſign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the ſecond decl. and ſo are the compounds of *manus*; *unimănus*; *centimănus*, &c. *Domus* is but partly of the ſecond; thus,

Domûs, *a houſe*, *fem.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. domus,	*Nom.* domus,
Gen. domûs, *or* -mi,	*Gen.* domorum, *or* -uum,
Dat. domui, *or* -mo,	*Dat.* domibus,
Acc. domum,	*Acc.* domos, *or* -us,
Voc. domus,	*Voc.* domus,
Abl. domo.	*Abl.* domibus.

Note. *Domûs*, in the genit. ſignifies, of a houſe; and *domi*, at home, *or* of home; as, *memineris domi.* Ter.

Exc. 2. The following have *ŭbus* in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, *a needle.*	Lacus, *a lake.*	Specus, *a den.*
Arcus, *a bow.*	Partus, *a birth.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*
Artus, *a joint.*	Portus, *a harbour.*	Veru, *a spit.*
Genu, *the knee.*		

Portus, genu, and *veru,* have likewise *ïbus;* as, *portïbus* or *portŭbus.*

Exc. 3. IESUS, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus, gruis,* a crane; thus, *fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructuem, fructue, fructues, fructuum, fructuibus, fructues, fructues, fructuibus.* So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis,* and in others, the dative in *u.* The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currûm* for *curruum.*

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es,* and are of the feminine gender; as,

Res, *a thing, fem.*

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Terminations.*	
Nom. res,	*Nom.* res	*es,*	*es,*
Gen. rĕi,	*Gen.* rērum,	*ei,*	*erum,*
Dat. rĕi,	*Dat.* rēbus,	*ei,*	*ebus,*
Acc. rem,	*Acc.* res,	*em,*	*es,*
Voc. res,	*Voc.* res,	*es,*	*es,*
Abl. re.	*Abl.* rēbus.	*e.*	*ebus.*

In like manner decline,

Acies, *the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.*	Ingluvies, *gluttony.*	Scabies, *the scab,* or *itch.*
Caries, *rottenness.*	Macies, *leanness.*	Series, *an order.*
Facies, *the face.*	Pernicies, *destruction.*	Species, *an appearance.*
Glacies, *ice.*	Proluvies, *a looseness.*	Superficies, *the surface.*
	Rabies, *madness.*	Temperies, *temperateness.*
	Sanies, *gore.*	

Except *dies* a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies,* the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e.*

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies,* except three, *fides,*

faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing: and all nouns in *ies*, are of the fifth, except these four, *abies*, a fir tree; *aries*, a ram; *paries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. Variable Nouns.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:*

Avernus, *a lake in Campania, hell.*
Dindȳmus, *a hill in Phrygia.*
Ismārus, *a hill in Thrace.*
Massĭcus, *a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.*
Mænălus, *a hill in Arcadia.*
Pangæus, *a promontory in Thrace.*
Tænārus, *a promontory in Laconia.*
Tartărus, *hell.*
Tāygĕtus, *a hill in Laconia.*

Thus, *Averna, Avernorum; Dindyma, -orum*, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga* or *cacumĭna* in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter:*

Jocus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*.

When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:*

Carbăsus, a sail, pl. *carbăsa*; *Pergămus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural:*

Cœlum, pl. *cœli*, heaven; *Elysium*, pl. *Elysii*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl, *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter:*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rāstra*; *frenum*, a bridle, pl. *freni* and *frena*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.*

Delicium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *Epŭlum*, a banquet, pl. *epŭlæ*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas*, *vāsis*, a vessel, plur. *vasa*, *vasorum*;

rum, *jugĕri*, an acre, plur. *jugĕra*, *jugĕrum*, *jugerĭbus*, which has likewiſe ſometimes *jugĕris* and *jugĕre* in the ſingular, from the obſolete *jugus* or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in caſes or in number.

Nouns are defective in caſes different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nefas*, wrong; *ſināpi*, muſtard; *mane*, the morning; as, *clarum mane*, Perſ. *A mane ad veſperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cepe*, an onion; *gausăpe*, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun as, *velle ſuum*, for *ſua voluntas*, his own inclination. *Perſ. Iſtud cras*, for *iſte craſtinus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart. O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omĕga*, or the large O of the Greeks; Inſīdus *eſt compoſitum ex* in *et* fīdus; *inſidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To theſe add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Job*, *Eliſabet*, *Jeruſalem*, &c.

2. Some are uſed only in one caſe, and therefore called *monoptōta*; as, *inquies*, want of reſt, in the nominative ſingular; *dicis* and *nauci*, in the genit. ſing.: thus, *dicis gratia*, for form's ſake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *inficias*, and *incĭta*, or *incĭtas*, in the acc. plur.: thus, *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a ſtrait, or non-plus; *ingrātiis*, in the abl. plur. in ſpite of one; and theſe ablatives ſingular, *noctu*, in the night time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readineſs; *natu*, by birth; *injuſſu*, without command or leave; *ergō*, for the ſake, as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious ſtory; *Compĕde*, m. with a fetter; *Caſſe* m. with a net; *veprem*, m. a briar: Plur. *Ambages*, *-ibus*; *compedes*, *-ibus*; *caſſes*, *-ium*; *vepres*, *-ium*, &c.

3. Some are uſed in two caſes only, and therefore called *diptōta*; as, *neceſſe* or *-um*, neceſſity; *volŭpe* or *volup*, pleaſure; *inſtar*, likeneſs, bigneſs; *aſtu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. ſing.; *veſper*,

m. abl. *vespĕre* or *vespĕri*, the evening; *firemps*, the same, all alike, abl. *firempse*; *sponte*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impĕtis*, m. and *impĕte*, force; *verbĕris*, n. genit. and *verbĕre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *verbĕra*, *verberum*, *verberĭbus*, &c. *repetundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppetiæ*, nom. pl. *suppetias* in the acc. help; *inferiæ*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prĕci precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Femĭnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dica*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *metus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuters, *melos*, a song; *mele*, songs; *epos*, a heroic poem; *cacoēthes*, an evil custom; *cete*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grates*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetraptōta*: *vĭcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pecŭdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *opis*, f. of help. Of these *pecŭdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire: *ditionis* wants it altogether: *vicis* is not used in the genitive plural; *opes* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pen-*

taptōta: thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with ſome others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confuſed maſs, wants the genit. ſing. and the plural entirely; dat. ſing. *chao*. So, *ſatias*, i. e. *ſatietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a ſituation, naſtineſs, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. ſing. alſo the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various ſorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they expreſs. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, moſt abſtract nouns, &c. as, *juſtitia*, juſtice, *ambĭtus*, ambition; *aſtus*, cunning; *muſica*, muſic; *apium*, parſley; *argentum*, ſilver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *triticum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *avēna*, oats; *juventus*, youth, &c. But of theſe we find ſeveral ſometimes uſed in the plural.

2. The following maſculines are hardly ever found in the plural:

Aër, ăĕris, *the air.*
Æther, -ĕris, *the ſky.*
Fimus, -i, *dung.*
Heſpĕrus, -i, *the evening ſtar.*
Limus, -i, *ſlime.*
Meridies, -iēi, *mid-day.*
Mundus, *a woman's ornaments.*
Muſcus, -i, *moſs.*
Nemo, -ĭnis, *no body.*
Penus, -i, *or* -ûs, *all manner of proviſions.*
Pontus, -i, *the ſea.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *duſt.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Sopor, -ōris, *ſleep.*
Viſcus, -i, *bird-lime.*

3. The following feminines are ſcarcely uſed in the plural:

Argilla, -æ, *potters earth.*
Fama, -æ, *fame.*
Humus, -i, *the ground.*
Lues, -is, *a plague.*
Plebs, plēbis, *the common people.*
Pubes, -is, *the youth.*
Quies, -ētis, *reſt.*
Salus, -ūtis, *ſafety.*
Sitis, -is, *thirſt.*
Supellex, -ĕctĭlis, *houſehold-furniture.*
Tabes, -is, *a conſumption.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.*
Veſpĕra, -æ, *the evening.*

4. Theſe neuters are ſeldom uſed in the plural:

Album, -i, *a liſt of names.*
Diluculum, -i, *the dawning of day.*
Ebur, -ŏris, *ivory.*
Lutum, -i, *clay.*
Nihil, nihĭlum, *or* nil, *nothing.*
Pelăgus, -i, *the ſea.*

Gelu, *ind. froſt.*
Hilum, -i, *the black ſpeck of a bean, a trifle.*
Juſtitium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not ſit.*
Lethum, *death.*
Penum, -i, *and* penus, -ŏris, *all kind of proviſions.*
Sal, sălis, *ſalt.*
Senium, -ii, *old age.*
Ver, vēris, *the ſpring.*
Virus, -i, *poiſon.*

5. Many nouns want the ſingular. Such are the names of feaſts, books, games, and ſeveral cities; as,

Apollināres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Bacchanalia, -ium, *the feaſts of Bacchus.*
Bucolĭca, -orum, *a book of paſtorals.*
Olympia, -orum, *the Olympic games.*
Syracūſæ, -arum, *Syracuſe.*
Hieroſolўma, -orum, *Jeruſalem; or* Hieroſolyma, -æ, *of the firſt declenſion.*

6. The following maſculines are hardly uſed in the ſingular:

Cancelli, *lattices.*
Cani, *grey hairs.*
Celĕres, -um, *the light-horſe.*
Codicilli, *writings.*
Dryădes, -um, *the nymphs of the woods.*
Druĭdes, -um, *the Druids, prieſts of the ancient Britons and Gauls.*
Decimæ, *tithes.*
Faſti, -orum, *or* faſtus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked feſtival days, the names of magiſtrates,* &c.
Fori, *the hatches of a ſhip, ſeats in the Circus,* or *the cells of a bee-hive.*
Hyădes, -um, *the ſeven ſtars.*
Ineptiæ, *ſilly ſtories.*
Inferi, *the gods below.*
Liberi, *children.*
Poſtĕri, *poſterity.*
Supĕri, *the gods above.*
Caſſes, -ium, *a hunter's net.*
Faſces, -ium, *a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magiſtrates of Rome.*
Fines, -ium, *the borders of a country,* or *a country.*
Furfŭres, -um, *ſcales in the head.*
Lemŭres, -um, *hobgoblins, or ſpirits in the dark.*
Majōres, -um, *anceſtors.*
Minōres, -um, *ſucceſſors.*
Natāles, -ium, *parentage.*
Procĕres, -um, *the nobles.*
Pugillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*
Sentes, -ium, *thorns.*
Vepres, -ium, *briars.*
Vergiliæ, *the ſeven ſtars.*

7. The following feminines want the ſingular number:

Alpes, -ium, *the Alps.*
Anguſtiæ, *difficulties.*
Apĭnæ, *gewgaws.*
Argutiæ, *quirks, witticiſms.*
Gades, -ium, *Cadiz.*
Gerræ, *trifles.*
Induciæ, *a truce.*
Induviæ, *clothes to put on.*
Parietīnæ, *ruinous walls.*
Partes, -ium, *a party.*
Phalĕræ, *trappings.*
Plagæ, *nets.*

Bigæ, *a chariot drawn —by two horses.*
Trigæ, ——— *by three.*
Quadrigæ, —— *by four.*
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Branchiæ, *the gills of a fish.*
Charites, -um *the three graces.*
Cunæ, *a cradle.*
Diræ, *imprecations, the furies.*
Divitiæ, *riches.*
Excubiæ, *watches.*
Exsequiæ, *funerals.*
Exuviæ, *spoils.*
Facetiæ, *pleasant sayings.*
Feriæ, *holidays.*
Facultates, -ium, *one's goods and chattels.*
Insidiæ, *snares.*
Kalendæ, Nonæ, Idus, -uum, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*
Lapicidinæ, *stone quarries.*
Litĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lactes, -ium, *the small guts.*
Manubiæ, *spoils taken in war.*
Minæ, *threats.*
Minutiæ, *little niceties.*
Nugæ, *trifles.*
Nundinæ, *a market.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Offuciæ, *cheats.*
Operæ, *workmen.*
Pleiades, -um, *the seven stars.*
Præstigiæ, *enchantments.*
Primitiæ, *first fruits.*
Quisquiliæ, *sweepings.*
Reliquiæ, *a remainder.*
Salebræ, *rugged place.*
Salinæ, *salt pits.*
Scalæ, *a ladder.*
Scatebræ, *a spring.*
Scopæ, *a besom.*
Tenebræ, *darkness.*
Thermæ, *hot baths.*
Thermopylæ, *straits; mount Oeta.*
Tricæ, *toys.*
Valvæ, *folding doors.*
Vindiciæ, *a claim of liberty, a defence.*

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular:

Acta, *public acts or records.*
Æstiva, *summer-quarters.*
Arma, *arms.*
Bellaria, -orum, *sweet meats.*
Bona, *goods.*
Brevia, -ium, *shelves.*
Castra, *a camp.*
Charistia, -orum, *a peace-feast.*
Cibaria, *victuals.*
Comitia, *an assembly of the people.*
Crepundia, *children's bawbles.*
Cunabula, *a cradle.*
Dicteria, *scoffs, witticisms.*
Exta, *the entrails.*
Februa, -orum, *purifying sacrifices.*
Flabra, *blasts of wind.*
Fraga, *strawberries.*
Hyberna, sc. castra, *winter-quarters.*
Ilia, -ium, *the entrails.*
Incunabula, *a cradle.*
Infecta, *insects.*
Mœnia, -ium, *the walls of a city.*
Munia, *offices.*
Orgia, *the sacred rites of Bacchus.*
Ovilia, -ium, *an inclosure, where the people went to give their votes.*
Palearia, -ium, *the dewlap of a beast.*
Parapherna, *all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.*
Parentalia, -ium, *solemnities at the funeral of parents.*
Philtra, *love potions.*
Præcordia, *the bowels.*
Principia, *the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.*
Pythia, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Rostra, *a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.*
Scruta, *old clothes.*
Sponsalia, -ium, *espousals.*
Stativa, *a standing camp.*

Juſta, *funeral rites.*
Lamenta, *lamentations.*
Lautia, *proviſions for the entertainment of foreign ambaſſadors.*
Luſtra, *dens of wild beaſts.*
Magalia, -ium, *cottages.*
Suovetaurilia, -ium, *a ſacrifice of a ſwine, a ſheep, and an ox.*
Talaria, -ium, *winged ſhoes.*
Teſqua, *rough places.*
Tranſtra, *the ſeats where the rowers ſit in ſhips.*

Several nouns in each of the above liſts are found alſo in the ſingular, but in a different ſenſe; thus, *caſtrum*, a caſtle; *litera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declenſion only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*, and *laurûs*, a laurel tree; *ſequeſter*, *-tri*, or *-tris*, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, hic or hoc *vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declenſion; as, *materia*, *-æ*; or, *materies*, *-iēi*, matter; *plebs*, *-is*, the common people, or *plebes*, *-is*, *-ĕi*, or contracted *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tonitrus*, *-ûs*, maſc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declenſion and gender; as, *penus*, *-i*, and *ûs*, m. or f. or *penus*, *-ŏris*, neut. all kind of proviſions. 7. In termination, gender, and declenſion; as, *æther*, *-ĕris*, maſc. and *æthra*, *-æ*, fem. the ſky. 8. Several nouns in the ſame declenſion are differently varied; as, *tigris*, *-is*, or *ĭdis*, a tyger: to which may be added, nouns which have the ſame ſignification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, *-æ*; or, *Fidenæ*, *-arum*, the name of a city.

The moſt numerous claſs of redundant nouns conſiſts of thoſe which expreſs the ſame meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, *-æ*; and *mendum*, *-i*, a fault; *caſſis*, *-ĭdis*; and *caſſida*, *-dæ*, a helmet. So,

Acīnus, & -um, *a grape ſtone.*
Alvear, & -e, & -ium, *a bee-hive.*
Amarăcus, & -um, *ſweet marjoram.*
Ancīle, & -ium, *an oval ſhield.*
Angiportus, -ûs, & -i, & -um, *a narrow lane.*
Aphractus, & -um, *an open ſhip.*
Apluſtre, & -um, *the ſtag, cubours.*
Bacŭlus, & -um, *a ſtaff.*
Balteus, & -um, *a belt.*
Batillus, & -um, *a fire ſhovel.*
Capŭlus, & -um, *a hilt.*
Capus, & -o, *a capon.*
Cepa, & -e indec, *an onion.*
Hebdŏmas, & -ăda, *a week.*
Intrīta, & -um, *fine mortar, minced meat.*
Librarium, & -a, *a library.*
Maceria, & -es, -iēi, *a wall.*
Milliare, & -ium, *a mile.*
Monitum, & -us, -ūs, *an admonition.*
Muria, & -es, -iēi, *brine* or *pickle.*
Naſus, & -um, *the noſe.*
Obſidio, & -um, *a ſiege.*
Oeſtrus, & -um, *a gad bee.*
Oſtrea, & -um, *an oyſter.*
Peplus, & -um, *a veil, a robe.*
Piſtrīna, & -um, *a bake-houſe.*

Clypeus, & -um, *a shield.*
Colluvics, & -io, *filth, dirt.*
Compages, & -go, *a joining.*
Conger, & -grus, *a large eel.*
Crocus, & -um, *saffron.*
Cubĭtus, & -um, *a cubit.*
Diluvium, & -es, *a deluge.*
Elephantus, & -as, -antis, *an elephant.*
Elĕgus, & -ëia, *an elegy.*
Esseda, & -um, *a chariot.*
Eventus, & -um, *an event.*
Fulgetra, & -um, *lightning.*
Galĕrus, & -um, *a hat.*
Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ĕris, *or* eri, *a bunch, a swelling.*
Glutĭnum, & -en, *glue.*
Prætextus, -us, & -um, *a pretext.*
Rapa, & -um, *a turnip.*
Ruma, & -men, *the cud.*
Ruscus, & -um, *a brush.*
Seps, et -es, f. *an hedge.*
Segmen, et -mentum, *a piece* or *paring.*
Sibĭlus, et -um, *a hissing.*
Sinus, et -um, *a milk-pail.*
Spurcitia, et -es, *nastiness.*
Stramen, et -tum, *straw.*
Suffĭmen, et -tum, *a perfume.*
Tignus, et -um, *a plank.*
Toral, et -āle, *a bed-covering.*
Torcŭlar, et -āre, *a wine-press.*
Viscus, et -um, *bird-lime.*
Veternus, et -um, *a lethargy.*

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus, *vasa, -orum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas;* but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *populus*, a people; *exercĭtus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priamĭdes*, the son of Priamus; *Æetias*, the daughter of Æetes; *Nerīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æacĭdes*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æăcus; *Romŭlĭdæ*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des;* of women, in

is, *as*, or *ne*. Thoſe in *des* and *ne* are of the firſt declenſion, and thoſe in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, *-dæ*, &c. pl. *-dæ*, *darum*, &c.; *Nerine*, *-es*; *Tyndăris*, *-ĭdis*, or *ĭdos*; *Æetias*, *-ădis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a ſubſtantive proper, ſignifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-ădis*, a woman born at Troy; *Sicŭlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicĕlis*, *-ĭdis*, a Sicilian woman: ſo, *Macĕdo*, *-ōnis*; *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the moſt part are to be conſidered as adjectives, having a ſubſtantive underſtood; as *Romānus*, *Athenienſis*, &c.

4. A ſubſtantive derived from an adjective, expreſſing ſimply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exiſts, is called an *Abſtract*; as *juſtĭtia*, juſtice; *bonĭtas*, goodneſs; *dulcēdo*, ſweetneſs; from *juſtus*, juſt; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, ſweet. The adjectives from which theſe abſtracts come, are called *Concretes*; becauſe, beſides the quality, they alſo ſuppoſe ſomething to which it belongs. Abſtracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from moſt adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A ſubſtantive derived from another ſubſtantive, ſignifying a diminution or leſſening of its ſignification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartŭla*, a little paper; *opuſculum*, a little work; *corcŭlum*, a little heart: *reticulum*, a ſmall net; *ſcabellum*, a ſmall form; *lapillus*, a little ſtone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pagella*, a little page: from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rete*, *ſcamnum*, *lapis*, *culter*, *pagĭna*. Several diminutives are ſometimes formed from the ſame primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerŭlus*, *puellus*, *puellŭlus*; from *ciſta*, *ciſtŭla*, *ciſtella*, *ciſtellŭla*; from *homo*, *homuncio*, *homunculus*. Diminutives for the moſt part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*; and are generally of the ſame gender with their primitives. When the ſignification of the primitive is increaſed, it is called an *Amplificative*, and

in *o*; as *Capito, -ōnis*, having a large head: So, *naſo, labeo, bucco*, having a large noſe, lips, cheeks.

6. A ſubſtantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun; as, *amor*, love; *doctrīna*, learning: from *am* and *doceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io, or, us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a leſſon; *amator*, a lover; *luctus*, grief, *creatūra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word *added* to a ſubſtantive, to expreſs its quality; as, *hard, ſoft.*

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality muſt belong to ſome ſubject. An adjective therefore always implies a ſubſtantive expreſſed or underſtood, and cannot make full ſenſe without it.

An adjective may be thus diſtinguiſhed from a ſubſtantive: If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make ſenſe; but if it be joined to a ſubſtantive, it will make nonſenſe: thus we can ſay, "a good thing;" but we cannot ſay, "a book thing."

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and caſe, to agree with ſubſtantives, in all theſe accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor caſes; but certain terminations anſwering to the gender, number, and caſe of the ſubſtantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three ſubſtantives of the ſame termination and declenſion.

All adjectives are either of the firſt and ſecond declenſion, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the firſt and ſecond declenſion; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declenſion:

Acer, *ſharp.*	Campeſter, *belonging to a plain.*	Sylveſter, *woody.*
Alăcer, *cheerful.*	Equeſter, *belonging to horſe.*	Pedeſter, *on foot.*
Celer, *ſwift.*	Salŭber, *wholeſome.*	Paluſter, *marſhy.*
Celĕber, *famous.*		Volŭcer, *ſwift.*

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the firſt and ſecond declenſion have their maſculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and

heir neuter always in *um*; as, *bonus*, for the masc. *bona*, or the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good: thus,

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. bon-us,	-a,	-um,	*N.* bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	*G.* bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
D. bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	*D.* bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A. bon-um,	-am,	-um,	*A.* bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bon-e,	-a,	-um,	*V.* bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bon-o,	-â,	-o.	*A.* bon-is,	-is,	-is.

Tener, tenĕra, tenĕrum, *tender.*

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. ten-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,	*N.* ten-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕra,
G. ten-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕri,	*G.* ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	*D.* ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	*A.* ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*V.* ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-erâ,	-ero.	*A.* ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

In like manner decline,

Asper, *rough.* Lacer, *torn.* Miser, *wretched.*
Ceter, *(hardly us'd) the rest.* Liber, *free.* Prosper, *prosperous.*
Gibber, *crook-backed.*

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *lanĭger*, bearing wool: *opĭfer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *fatur*, *fatŭra*, *fatŭrum*, fruitful. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *ater*, *atra*, *atrum*, black; gen. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; dat. *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c. &c.

Æger, *sick.*	Niger, *black.*	Sacer, *sacred.*
Creber, *frequent.*	Piger, *slow.*	Scaber, *rough.*
Glaber, *smooth.*	Pulcher, *fair.*	Teter, *ugly.*
Integer, *entire.*	Ruber, *red.*	Vafer, *crafty.*
Macer, *lean.*		

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, -trum, *or* -tĕra, -tĕrum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders; in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; *gen.* unius, *dat.* uni, *one.*
Alius, -ius, *one of many, another.*
Nullus, nullius, *none.*
Solus, -ius, *alone.*
Totus, -ius, *whole.*
Ullus, -ius, *any.*
Alter, alterius, *one of two, the other.*
Neuter, -trius, *neither.*
Uter, utrius, *whether of the two.*
Uterque, utriusque, *both.*
Uterlibet, triuslibet, *which of the two you pl.*
Utervis, -triusvis,

Alterŭter, *the one or the other*, alterutrius, alterutri, *and ſometimes* alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.

Theſe adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitivi*; and ſeem to reſemble, in their ſignification as well as declenſion, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obſ. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it ſhould always be joined with a ſubſtantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber* a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum ſedile*, a good ſeat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its ſubſtantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for inſtance, commonly ſay, *bonus*, a good man, underſtanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, underſtanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, underſtanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *felix*, for the maſc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*N.*	fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G.	fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	*G.*	fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D.	fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	*D.*	fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A.	fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	*A.*	fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V.	fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*V.*	fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A.	fel-ice, *or* -ici, &c.			*A.*	fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mitis*, for the maſc. and fem. *mite*, for the neut. meek; ſo *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*, meeker; thus,

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*N.*	mites,	mites,	mitia,
G.	mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	*G.*	mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D.	miti,	miti,	miti,	*D.*	mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A.	mitem,	mitem,	mite,	*A.*	mites,	mites,	mitia,
V.	mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*V.*	mites,	mites,	mitia,
A.	miti,	miti,	miti.	*A.*	mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	miti-or	-or,	-us,	*N.*	miti-ōres,	-ōres,	-ōra,
G.	miti-ōris,	-ōris,	-ōris,	*G.*	miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum,
D.	miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	*D.*	miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus
A.	miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	*A.*	miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,

V. miti-or, -or, -us, *V.* miti-ores, -ores, -ora,
A. miti-ore, *or* -ori, &c. *A.* miti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus.

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *acer* or *acris*, for the maſc. *acris*, for the fem. *acris*, for the neut. ſharp; thus,

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. a-cer *or* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*N.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	*G.* a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	*D.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	*A.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer *or* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*V.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri.	*A.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

In like manner, *alacer* or *alacris*, *celer* or *celeris*, *cĕlebs* or *celebris*, *salŭber* or *salŭbris*, *volŭcer* or *volucris*, &c.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declenſion have *e* or *i* in the ablative ſingular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accuſative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *bospes*, *ſoſpes*, *ſuperſtes*, *juvĕnis*, *ſenex*, and *pauper*, have only in the ablative ſingular, and conſequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have alſo *e* in the abl. ſing. and *um*, not *m* in the gen. plur. *Compos*, *-ŏtis*, maſter of, that hath obtained s deſire; *impos*, *-ŏtis*, unable; *inops*, *-ŏpis*, poor; *ſupplex*, *-ĭcis*, ſuppliant, humble; *uber*, *-ĕris*, fertile; *conſors*, *-tis*, ſharing, a partner; *ĕgener*, *-ĕris*, degenerate, *or* degenerating; *vigil*, watchful; *puber*, *-ris*, of age, marriageable; and *celer*: Alſo compounds in *ceps*, *fex*, , and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, *-ĭcis*, cunning, artiſt; *bipes*, *-pĕdis*, two-footed; *bicorpor*, *-ŏris*, two-bodied, &c. ll theſe have ſeldom the neut. ſing. and almoſt never the neut. ur. in the nomina. and accuſative. To which add *memor*, mindl, which has *memŏri*, and *memŏrum*: alſo *deſes*, *reſes*, *hebes*, *perpes*, *xpes*, *teres*, *concŏlor*, *verſicŏlor*, which likewiſe for the moſt part int the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *păris* but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as, *compăre*, or *-ri*. *Vetus*, old, hath *vetĕra*, and *vetĕrum plus*, more, which is only uſed in the neut. ſing. has *plure*; and in the plural, *plures*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Expes*, hopeleſs; and *potis*, *-e*, able, are only uſed in the nominative. *Potis* has alſo ſometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called abſolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with ſubſtantives neuter for the moſt part have *i*; as, *victrici ferro*, not *victrīce*.

3. Different words are ſometimes uſed to expreſs the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the maſc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plur. has likewiſe the neuter gender; thus, *victrices victricia*: ſo, *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is alſo neut. in the ſingular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *armus*, *jŭgum*, *limus*, *ſomnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the firſt and ſecond declenſion, or of the third; as, *declivis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declīvus*, *-a*, *-um*, ſteep; *imbecillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *ſemiſomnis*, and *ſemiſomnus*, half-aſleep; *exanĭmis* and *exanĭmus*, lifeleſs. But ſeveral of them do not admit of this variation; thus we ſay *magnanimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrēnus*, *leviſomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we ſay, *puſillanimis*, *injŭgis*, *illīmis*, *inſomnis*, *exſomnis*, not *puſillanimus*, &c. So, *ſemianimis*, *inermis*, *ſublīmis*, *acclīvis*, *declīvis*, *proclīvis*; rarely *ſemianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *gordatus*, *morātus*, *cæleſtis*, *adamantĭnus*, *corporeus*, *agreſtis*, *æſtivus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *calum*, *adamas*, &c. Thoſe which diminiſh the ſignification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *miſellus*, *parvŭlus*, *riuſcŭlus*, &c. Thoſe which ſignify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *oſus* or *entus*; as, *vinōſus*, *vinolentus*, given much to wine; *operōſus*, laborious; *plumbōſus*, full of lead; *nōſus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *naſūtus*, having a large noſe; *literatus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a ſubſtantive or from another adjective, ſignifying poſſeſſion or property, is called a *Poſſeſſive Adjective*; as *Scotĭcus*, *paternus*, *herīlis*, *alienus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a maſter, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabilis* amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable: from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens, animans, rudens, serpens; advocatus, sponsus, natus, legatus; sponsa, nata, serta*, &c. *corona*, a garland; *praetexta*, &c. *vestis; debitum, decretum, praeceptum, satum, tectum, votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie; crastinus*, from *cras; binus*, from *bis*, &c. There are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra; anticus*, from *ante: posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal, Ordinal, Distributive, and Multiplicative.*

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,	*one.*	Triginta,	*thirty.*
Duo,	*two.*	Quadraginta,	*forty.*
Tres,	*three.*	Quinquaginta,	*fifty.*
Quatuor,	*four.*	Sexaginta,	*sixty.*
Quinque,	*five.*	Septuaginta,	*seventy.*
Sex,	*six.*	Octoginta,	*eighty.*
Septem,	*seven.*	Nonaginta,	*ninety.*
Octo,	*eight.*	Centum,	*a hundred.*
Novem,	*nine.*	Ducenti,	*two hundred.*
Decem,	*ten.*	Trecenti,	*three hundred.*
Undecim,	*eleven.*	Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*
Duodecim,	*twelve.*	Quingenti,	*five hundred.*
Tredecim,	*thirteen.*	Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*
Quatuordecim,	*fourteen.*	Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*
Quindecim,	*fifteen.*	Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*
Sexdecim,	*sixteen.*	Nongenti,	*nine hundred.*
Septendecim,	*seventeen.*	Mille,	*a thousand.*
Octodecim,	*eighteen.*	Duo millia, or bis mille,	*two thousand.*
Novemdecim,	*nineteen.*	Decem millia, or decies mille,	*ten thousand.*
Viginti,	*twenty.*	Viginti millia, or vicies mille,	*twenty thousand.*
Viginti unus, or Unus & viginti,	*twenty-one.*		
Viginti duo, or Duo & viginti,	*twenty-two.*		

The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *una mania*, one wall; or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes.

Duo and *tres* are thus declined:

	Plur.			*Plur.*	
N.	duo,	duæ,	duo,	tres, tres,	tria,
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium, trium,	trium,
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus, tribus,	tribus,
A.	duos *or* duo,	duas,	duo.	tres, tres,	tria,
V.	duo,	duæ,	duo,	tres, tres,	tria,
A.	duobus	duabus,	duobus,	tribus, tribus,	tribus,

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti, -tæ, -ta*; *ducentorum, -tarum, torum, &c.*

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective: when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia, millium, millibus, &c.*

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines, &c.* But with *mille*, a substantive, we say *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum, tria millia, quatuor millia, centum* or *centena millia hominum; Decies centena millia*, a million; *Vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The Distributive are, *singŭli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
1 Primus, a, um.	Singuli, æ, a.	Semel, *once.*
2 Secundus.	bini.	bis, *twice.*
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, *thrice.*
4 quartus.	quaterni.	quater, *four times.*
5 quintus.	quini.	quinquies, &c.
6 sextus.	seni.	sexies.
7 septimus.	septēni.	septies.
8 octavus.	octōni.	octies.
9 nonus.	novēni.	novies.
10 decimus.	deni.	decies.

11	undecimus.	undeni.	undecies.
12	duodecimus.	duodeni.	duodecies.
13	decimus tertius.	tredeni, terni deni.	tredecies.
14	decimus quartus.	quaterni deni.	quatuordecies.
15	decimus quintus.	quindeni.	quindecies.
16	decimus sextus.	seni deni.	sexdecies.
17	decimus septimus.	septeni deni.	decies ac septies.
18	decimus octavus.	octoni deni.	decies ac octies.
19	decimus nonus.	noveni deni.	decies et novies.
20	vigesimus, vicesimus.	viceni.	vicies.
21	vigesimus primus.	viceni singuli.	vicies semel.
30	trigesimus, tricesimus.	triceni.	tricies.
40	quadragesimus.	quadrageni.	quadragies.
50	quinquagesimus.	quinquageni.	quinquagies.
60	sexagesimus.	sexageni.	sexagies.
70	septuagesimus.	septuageni.	septuagies.
80	octogesimus.	octogeni.	octogies.
90	nonagesimus.	nonageni.	nonagies.
100	centesimus.	centeni.	centies.
200	ducentesimus.	duceni.	ducenties.
300	trecentesimus.	trecenteni.	trecenties.
400	quadringentesimus.	quatercenteni.	quadringenties.
500	quingentesimus.	quinquies centeni.	quingenties.
600	sexcentesimus.	sexies centeni.	sexcenties.
700	septingentesimus.	septies centeni.	septingenties.
800	octingentesimus.	octies centeni.	octingenties.
900	nongentesimus.	novies centeni.	nongenties.
1000	millesimus.	milleni.	millies.
2000	bis millesimus.	bis milleni.	bis millies.

4. The multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, *or* two-fold; *triplex*, triple, *or* three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex, -icis, &c.*

The interrogative words, to which the above numerals answer, are, *quot, quotus, quoteni, quoties*, and *quotuplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable. So *Tot*, so many; *totidem*, just so many; *quotquot, quotcunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus, tripartitus, &c. duplus, triplus, &c. bimus, trimus, &c. biennis, triennis, &c. bimestris, trimestris, &c. bilibris, trilibris, &c. binarius, ternarius, &c.* which last are

applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus*, *senarius*, a verse of six feet; *denarius nummus*, a coin of ten as; *octogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as* tall *as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *fortior*, stronger.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *fortissimus*, strongest.

Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us*, for the neuter: The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *simus*; as, *Altus*, high, genit. *alti*; Comparative, *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neuter, higher. Superlative, *altissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, highest. So *mitis*, meek; dative, *miti*; *mitior*, *-or*, *-us*, meeker; *mitissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension. The superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*, gen. *alti*, *altioris*, *altissimi*, &c.

Irregular and Defective Comparison.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.

Parvus, minor, minĭmus, *small, less, least.*
Multus ——— plurĭmus, *much, more, most.*
m. Multa, plurima; *neut.* multum, plus, plurimum; *plur.* Multi, plures, plurimi; multæ, plures, plurimæ, *&c.*

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative d superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which the positive has fallen into disuse: in others, the regular form contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *most*, for *morest*; *least*, r *lessest*; *worst*, for *worsest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *limus*:

cĭlis, facilior, facillĭmus, *easy.* Imbecillis, imbecillior, imbecillĭmus, *weak.*
racĭlis, gracilior, gracillimus, *lean.*
umĭlis, humilior, humillimus, *low.* Similis, similior, simillĭmus, *like.*

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, it form the superlative differently:

ter, citerior, citimus, *near.* Matūrus, -ior, maturrĭmus, *or* maturissimus, *ripe.*
exter, dexterior, dextimus, *right.*
nister, finisterior, finistĭmus, *left.* Postĕrus, posterior, postremus, *behind.*
cter, -erior, extimus, *or* extrēmus, *outward.* Superus, -rior, suprēmus, *or* summus, *high.*
fĕrus, -ior, infĭmus, *or* īmus, *below.* Vetus, veterior, veterrĭmus, *old.*
tĕrus, interior, intĭmus, *inward.*

4. Compounds in *dĭcus*, *lŏquus*, *fĭcus*, and *volus*, have *tior*, and *entissimus*; as, *malĕdĭcus*, railing, *maledicentior*, *aledicentissimus*: So *magnĭlŏquus*, one that boasteth; *benĕficus*, beneficent; *malĕvŏlus*, malevolent; *mirĭfĭcus*, wonerful, *-entior*, *-entissimus*, or *mirificissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

eterior, *worse*, deterrimus. Propior, *nearer*, proximus, *nearest* or *next.*
cior, *swifter*, ocissĭmus.
rior, *former*, primus. Ulterior, *farther*, ultimus.

2. The following want the comparative:

nclytus, inclytissimus, *renowned.* Nuperus, nuperrimus, *late.*
ferĭtus; meritissimus, *deserving.* Par, pariſſimus, *equal.*
lovus, novissimus, *new.* Sacer, sacerrimus, *sacred.*

3. The following want the superlative:

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young.*
Diuturnus, diuturnior, *lasting.*
Ingens, ingentior, *huge.*
Juvĕnis, junior, *young.*
Opīmus, opimior, *rich.*
Pronus, pronior, *inclined downwards.*
Satur, saturior, *full.*
Senex, senior, *old.*

To supply the superlative of *juvĕnis* or *adolescens*, we say *minor natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ĭlis*, *ālis*, and *bĭlis*, also want the superlative; as *civīlis*, *civilior*, civil; *regālis*, *regalior*, regal; *flebĭlis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So *juvenīlis*, youthful; *exĭlis*, small; *regālis*, like a king, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: thus, *secrētus*, *-ior*, secret; *declīvis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near.

Anterior, former; *sequior*, worse; *satior*, better; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versĭcŏlor*, of divers colours; *pestĭfer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *īvus*, *ēnus*, *orus*, *ĭmus*, and diminutives; as, *dubius*, doubtful; *vacuus*, empty; *fugax*, *-ācis*, that flieth away; *matutīnus*, early; *canōrus*, shrill; *legitĭmus*, lawful; *tenellus*, somewhat tender; *majusculus*, &c.; together with great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, *-ŏcis*, soon *or* early ripe; *mirus*, *egenus*, *lacer*, *memor*, *sospes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy; *magis egenus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egenus*, very *or* most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are irregularly compared.

PRONOUN.

A pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun.* Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, *he* turned *his* arms against *his* country.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego*, *mei*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*; *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, *I*.

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. ego, *I*,	*Nom.* nos, *we*,
Gen. mei, *of me*,	*Gen.* nostrûm *or* nostri, *of us*,
Dat. mihi, *to me*,	*Dat.* nobis, *to us*,
Acc. me, *me*,	*Acc.* nos, *us*,
Voc. ———	*Voc.* ———
Abl. me, *with me*.	*Abl.* nobis, *with us*.

Tu, *thou*.

Sing.		*Plur.*
N. tu, *thou*,		*N.* vos, *ye* or *you*,
G. tui, *of thee*,		*G.* vestrûm *or* -tri, *of you*,
D. tibi, *to thee*,	or *you*.	*D.* vobis, *to you*,
A. te, *thee*,		*A.* vos, *you*,
V. tu, *O thou*,		*V.* vos, *O ye* or *you*,
A. te, *with thee*,		*A.* vobis, *with you*.

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself*.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. ———	*N.* ———
G. sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself*,	*G.* sui, *of themselves*,
D. sibi, *to himself, to herself*, &c.	*D.* sibi, *to themselves*,
A. se, *himself*, &c.	*A.* se, *themselves*,
V. ———	*V.* ———
A. se, *with himself*, &c.	*A.* se, *with themselves*.

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus we cannot say, *O ego*, O I; *O nos*, O we.

Obs. 2. *Mibi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mî*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrûm* and *vestrûm*.

We commonly use *nostrûm* and *vestrûm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are ex-

prefſed in Latin by theſe pronominal adjec
hic, or *is*; as,

Ille, for the maſc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, that: or, *ille*, he; *illa*, ſhe; *illud*, it, or tha

	Sing.				*Plur*	
N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	*N.*	illi,	illæ,
G.	illius,	illius,	illius,	*G.*	illorum,	ilları
D.	illi,	illi,	illi,	*D.*	illis,	illis,
A.	illum,	illam,	illud,	*A.*	illos,	illas,
V.	ille,	illa,	illud,	*V.*	illi,	illæ,
A.	illo,	illâ,	illo.	*A.*	illis,	illis,

Ipſe, he himſelf, *ipſa*, ſhe herſelf, *ipſum*, it *iſta*, *iſtud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only in the nom. acc. and voc. ſing. neut.

Ipſe is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *ſui*; and the ſame force with *ſelf* in Engliſh, when poſſeſſive pronoun; as, *ego ipſe*, I myſelf.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

	Sing.				*Plur*	
N.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*N.*	hi,	hæ,
G.	hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	*G.*	horum,	haru
D.	huic,	huic,	huic,	*D.*	his,	his,
A.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	*A.*	hos,	has,
V.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*V.*	hi,	hæ,
A.	hoc,	hac,	hoc.	*A.*	his,	his,

Is, ea, id; *he*, *ſhe*, *it*; or *that*.

	Sing.				*Plur*	
N.	is,	ea,	id,	*N.*	ii,	eæ,
G.	ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	*G.*	eorum,	ear
D.	ei,	ei,	ei,	*D.*	iis, *or* eis,	
A.	eum,	eam,	id,	*A.*	eos,	eas
V.	———			*V.*	———	
A.	eo,	eâ,	eo.	*A.*	iis, *or* eis,	

Quis, *quæ*, *quod*, or *quid*? which, what? C *or* what man? *quæ*? who? *or* what wor *quid*? what? *or* what thing? thus,

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod*or*quid,	*N.* qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.* queis *or* quibus,		&c.
A. quem,	quam,	quod*or*quid,	*A.* quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ——	——	——	*V.* ——	——	——
A. quo,	qua,	quo.	*A.* queis *or* quibus,		&c.

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; Or vir *qui,* the man *who* or *that;* fœmina *quæ,* the woman *who* or *that;* negotium *quod,* the thing *which* or *that:* genit. vir *cujus,* the man *whose* or *of whom;* mulier *cujus,* the woman *whose,* or *of whom;* negotium *cujus,* the thing *of which,* seldom *whose, &c.* thus,

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	*N.* qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.* queis *or* quibus,		&c.
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	*A.* quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ——	——	——	*V.* ——	——	——
A. quo,	qua,	quo.	*A.* queis *or* quibus,		&c.

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego, tu,* and *sui. Meus,* my or mine; *tuus,* thy or thine; *suus,* his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus, -a, -um;* and *noster,* our; *vester,* your, like *pulcher, -chra, -chrum,* of the first and second declension.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras,* of your country; *cujas,* of what *or* which country, are declined like *felix,* of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis,* dat. *nostrāti, &c.*

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things, which cannot be addressed, or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus hath *mi,* and sometimes *meus,* in the voc. singular masculine.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quî* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis:* and instead of *cujus* the gen. of *quis,* we find an adjective pronoun *cujus, -a, -um.*

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes;

1. *Demonſtratives*, which point out any perſon or thing preſent, or, as if preſent: *Ego, tu, hic, iſte*, and ſometimes *ille, is, ipſe*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to ſomething going before: *ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, qui*.

3. *Poſſeſſives*, which ſignify poſſeſſion: *meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter*.

4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which ſignify one's country: *noſtras, veſtras, cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we aſk a queſtion: *quis? cujas?* When they do not aſk a queſtion, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the ſame nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or repreſent the ſame object to the mind: *ſui*, and *ſuus*.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variouſly:

1. With other pronouns; as, *iſthic, iſthæc, iſthoc, iſthunc*, or *iſtunc*. Acc. *Iſthunc, iſthanc, iſthoc*, or *iſthuc*. Abl. *Iſthoc, iſthac, iſthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *iſthæc*, of *iſte* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With ſome other parts of ſpeech: as, *bujuſmŏdi, cujuſmŏdi*, &c. *mecum, tecum, ſecum, nobiſcum, vobiſcum, quocum*, or *quîcum* and *quibuſcum: eccum, eccùm; eccos, eccas*, and ſometimes *ecca*, in the nom. ſing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With ſome ſyllable added: as, *tute*, of *tu* and *te*, uſed only in the nom. *egomet, tutemet, ſuimet*, through all the caſes, thus, *mecimet, tuimet*, &c. of *ego, tu, ſui*, and *met*. Inſtead of *tumet* in the nom. we ſay, *tutemet: biccine, bæccine*, &c. in all caſes that end in *e*; of *hic* and *cine: Meapte, tuapte, ſuapte, noſtrapte, veſtrapte*, in the ablat. fem. and ſometimes *meopte, tuopte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte: biece, bæce, bocce; bujuſce, bice, biſce, boſce*; of *hic* and *ce*: whence *bujuſcemŏdi, ejuſcemŏdi, cujuſcemŏdi*. So *IDEM*, the ſame, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N.	ĭdem,	ĕădem,	ĭdem,	*N.*	ĭidem,	eædem,	ĕădem,
G.	ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	*G.*	eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D.	eidem,	eidem,	eidem,	*D.*	eiſdem *or* iiſdem, &c.		
A.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	*A.*	eoſdem,	eaſdem,	eadem,
V.	idem,	eadem,	idem,	*V.*	iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
A.	eōdem,	eâdem,	cōdem.	*A.*	eiſdem *or* iiſdem, &c.		

The pronouns which we find moſt frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in compoſition is ſometimes the firſt, ſometimes the laſt, and ſometimes likewiſe the middle part of the word compounded: but *qui* is always the firſt.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put firſt, are, *quiſnam*, who? *quiſpiam, quiſquam*, any one: *quiſque*, every one; *quiſquis*, whoſoever; which are thus declined;

Nom.		*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quiſnam,	quænam quodnam *or* quidnam;	cujuſnam,	cuinam,
Quiſpiam,	quæpiam, quodpiam *or* quidpiam;	cujuſpiam,	cuipiam,
Quiſquam,	quæquam, quodquam *or* quidquam;	cujuſquam,	cuiquam,
Quiſque,	quæque, quodque *or* quidque;	cujuſque,	cuique,
Quiſquis,	——— quidquid *or* quicquid;	cujuſcujus,	cuicui.

And ſo in the other caſes, according to the ſimple *quis*. But *quiſquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accuſative. *Quiſquam* has alſo *quicquam*, for *quidquam*. Accuſative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is ſcarcely uſed.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put laſt, have *qua* in the nominative ſing. fem. and in the nominative and accuſative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, ſome; *ecquis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; alſo *nequis*, *ſiquis*, *numquis*, which for the moſt part are read ſeparately, thus, *ne quis*; *ſi quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

Nom.		*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Aliquis, aliqua,	aliquod *or* aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui,
Ecquis, ecqua *or* ecquæ,	ecquod *or* ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui.
Si quis, ſi qua,	ſi quod *or* ſi quid,	ſi cujus,	ſi cui,
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod *or* ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui,
Num quis, num qua,	num quod *or* num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquiſnam*, who? *unuſquiſque*, gen. *uniuſcujuſque*, every one. The former is uſed only in the nom. ſing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whoſoever; *quidam*, ſome; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you pleaſe; which are thus declined:

Nom.		*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quicunque,	quæcunque, quodcunque,	cujuſcunque,	cuicunque,
Quidam,	quædam, quoddam *or* quiddam,	cujuſdam,	cuidam,
Quilibet,	quælibet, quodlibet *or* quidlibet,	cujuſlibet,	cuilibet,
Quivis,	quævis, quodvis *or* quidvis,	cujuſvis,	cuivis.

Obſ. 1. All theſe compounds have ſeldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obſ. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have ſometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obſ. 3. *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, or *quiddam*, in the acc. ſing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put inſtead of *m*, for the better ſound.

Obſ. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are uſed when they agree with a ſubſtantive in the ſame caſe; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the moſt part have either no ſubſtantive expreſſed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reaſon they are by ſome reckoned ſubſtantives.

VERB.

A verb is a word which expreſſes what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The ſun *ſhines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of ſpeech which ſignifies to be, to do, or to ſuffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, becauſe it is the moſt eſſential word in a ſentence, without which the other parts of ſpeech can form no complete ſenſe. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his leſſon with care*, is a perfect ſentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no ſentence at all: thus, *the diligent boy his leſſon with care.*

A verb therefore may be thus diſtinguiſhed from any other part of ſpeech: Whatever word expreſſes an affirmation or aſſertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a ſubſtantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full ſenſe, is a verb; as, *ſtorm fall, I walk, walk thou.* Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, becauſe they contain an affirmation; but when we ſay, *a long walk, a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expreſſed; and the ſame words *walk* and *fall* become ſubſtantives or nouns. We often find likewiſe in Latin the ſame word uſed as a verb, and alſo as ſome other part of ſpeech; thus, *amor, -ōris*, love, a ſubſtantive, and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with reſpect to their ſignification, are divided into three different claſſes, *Active*, *Paſſive*, and *Neuter*; becauſe we conſider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but ſimply exiſting, or exiſting in a certain ſtate or condition; as in a ſtate of motion or reſt, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expreſſes an action, and neceſſarily ſuppoſes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Paſſive* expreſſes a paſſion or ſuffering, or the receiving of an action; and neceſſarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expreſſes neither action nor paſſion, but ſimply the being, ſtate, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I ſleep; *ſedeo*, I ſit.

The verb *Active*, is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litĕras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambŭlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistĕre*, to stop; *incipĕre*, to begin; *durāre*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be, *or* to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, *or* to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *ămo*, I love: the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *ămor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *Moods* are the various *manners* of expreſſing the ſignification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms poſitively; as, *amo*, I love: *amābo*, I ſhall love: or aſks a queſtion; as, *an tu amas?* doſt thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is uſually joined to ſome other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itſelf; as, *ſi me obsecret, redībo*, if he intreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* ſimply expreſſes the ſignification of the verb, without limiting it to any perſon or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenſes* or *Times* expreſs the time when any thing is ſuppoſed to be, to act, or to ſuffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the preſent, paſt and future.

Paſt time is expreſſed three different ways. When we ſpeak of a thing, which was doing, but not finiſhed at ſome former time, we uſe the *Preter-imperfect*, or paſt time not completed; as, *ſcribebam*, I was writing.

When we ſpeak of a thing now finiſhed, we uſe the *Preter-perfect*, or paſt time completed; as, *ſcripſi*, I wrote, *or* have written.

When we ſpeak of a thing finiſhed at or before ſome paſt time, we uſe the *Preter-pluperfect*, or paſt time more than completed; as, *ſcripsĕram*, I had written.

Future time is expreſſed two different ways. A thing may be conſidered, either as ſimply about to be done, or as actually finiſhed, at ſome future time; as, *ſcribam*, I ſhall write, *or*, I ſhall [*then*] be writing; *ſcripsĕro*, I ſhall have written.

4. *Number* marks *how many* we ſuppoſe to be, to act, or to ſuffer.

5. *Perſon* ſhews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the perſon ſpeaking, to the perſon addreſſed, or to ſome other perſon or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three perſons, to agree with ſubſtantive nouns and pronouns in theſe reſpects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor perſons, but certain terminations anſwering to the perſon and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly ſaid to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly claſſed, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tenſe, Number, and Perſon.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *Firſt*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus diſtinguiſhed:

The Firſt has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive; the

econd has *e* long, the Third has *e* ſhort, and the Fourth as *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dare*, to give, which has *ă* ſhort; and alſo its compounds; us, *Circumdăre*, to ſurround; *circumdănus*, *-dătis*, *-dăbam*, *-dăbo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewiſe diſtinguiſhed om one another by the different terminations of the fol-owing tenſes:

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Preſent Tenſe.

	Singular. Perſons.			*Plural. Perſons.*		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
1.	-o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
2.	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
3.	-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
4.	-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbamus,	-ēbatis,	-ēbant.
-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ēbamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iēbamus,	-iēbatis,	-iēbant.

Future.

-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābĭmus,	-ābĭtis,	-ābunt.
-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbĭmus,	-ēbĭtis,	-ēbunt.
-am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Preſent Tenſe.

-em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
-eām,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

-arem,	-ares,	-aret;	-āremus,	-āretis,	-arent.
-erem,	-eres,	-eret;	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-ĕremus,	-ĕretis,	-ĕrent.
-īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-īremus,	-īretis,	-īrent.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-a *or* -ato,	-ato;	-ate *or* -atōte,	-anto.
2.	-e *or* -eto,	-eto;	-ete *or* -etōte,	-ento.
3.	-e *or* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *or* -ītōte,	-unto,
4.	-i *or* -īto,	-īto;	-īte *or* -ītōte,	-iunto,

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Preſent Tenſe.

1.	-or,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmĭni,	-antur.
2.	-eor,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
3.	-or,	-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-ĭmĭni,	-untur.
4.	-ior,	-īris *or* -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmĭni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābar,	-ābāris *or* -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmĭni,	-ābantur
2.	-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur
3.	-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur
4.	-iēbar,	-iēbāris *or* -iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmĭni,	-iēbantur

Future.

1.	-ābor,	-ābĕris *or* -abĕre,	-ābĭtur;	-ābĭmur,	-ābĭmĭni,	-ābuntur
2.	-ēbor,	-ēbĕris *or* -ebĕre,	-ēbĭtur;	-ēbĭmur,	-ēbĭmĭni,	-ēbuntur
3.	-ar,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
4.	-iar,	-iēris *or* -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmĭni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Preſent Tenſe.

1.	-er,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
2.	-ear,	-eāris *or* -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmĭni,	-eantur.
3.	-ar,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-amĭni,	-antur.
4.	-iar,	-iāris *or* -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmĭni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārer,	-ārēris *or* -ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmĭni,	-ārentur.
2.	-ērer,	-ērēris *or* -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmĭni,	-ērentur.
3.	-ĕrer,	-ĕrēris *or* -ĕrēre,	-ĕrētur;	-ĕrēmur,	-ĕrēmĭni,	-ĕrentur.
4.	-īrer,	-īrēris *or* -īrēre,	-īrētur;	-īrēmur,	-īrēmĭni,	-īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-are *or* -ator,	-ator;	-amĭni,	-antor.
2.	-ere *or* -etor,	-etor;	-emĭni,	-entor.
3.	-ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-īmĭni,	-untor.
4.	-īre *or* -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmĭni,	-iuntor.

Obſerve, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third perſon plur. of the preſent indic. active, and *iuntur* in the paſſive; and ſo in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the termination of the fourth conjugation, *ĭēbam* and *iam*; *ĭēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenſes are the ſame through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf.	-i,	-iſti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-iſtis,	-erunt *or* ere.
Plu.	-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-ĕramus,	-ĕratis,	-ĕrant.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf.	-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis, -ĕrint.
Plu.	-iſſem,	-iſſes,	-iſſet;	-iſſemus,	-iſſetis, -iſſent.
Fut.	-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis, -ĕrint.

Theſe Tenſes, in the Paſſive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *ſum*, which is alſo uſed to expreſs the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated:

Principal Parts.

Pref. Indic.	*Perf. Indic.*	*Pref. Infin.*	
Sum,	fui,	eſſe,	*To be.*

Indicative Mode.

Preſent Tenſe. *am.*

Perſon.	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1.	Sum, *I am*,	Sŭmus, *We are*,
2.	Es, *Thou art* or *you are*,	Eſtis, *Ye* or *you are*,
3.	Eſt, *He is*;	Sunt, *They are.*

Imperfect. *was.*

1.	Eram, *I was*,	Erāmus, *We were*,
2.	Eras, *Thou waſt*, or *you were*,	Eratis, *Ye were*,
3.	Erat, *He was*;	Erant, *They were.*

Perfect. *have been* or *was.*

1.	Fui, *I have been*,	Fuĭmus, *We have been*,
2.	Fuiſti, *Thou haſt been*,	Fuiſtis, *Ye have been*,
3.	Fuit, *He hath been*;	Fuĕrunt, *or* -ere, *They have been.*

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

1. Fuĕram, *I had been.* Fuĕrāmus, *We had been.*
2. Fueras, *Thou hadſt been.* Fueratis, *Ye had been.*
3. Fuerat, *He had been;* Fuerant, *They had been.*

Future. *ſhall* or *will.*

1. Ero, *I ſhall be,* Erĭmus, *We ſhall be,*
2. Eris, *Thou ſhalt be,* Eritis, *Ye ſhall be,*
3. Erit, *He ſhall be;* Erunt, *They ſhall be.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Preſent Tenſe. *may* or *can.*

1. Sim, *I may be,* Sīmus, *We may be,*
2. Sis, *Thou mayeſt be,* Sitis, *Ye may be,*
3. Sit, *He may be;* Sint, *They may be.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would* or *ſhould.*

1. Eſſem, *I might be,* Eſſēmus, *We might be,*
2. Eſſes, *Thou mighteſt be,* Eſſetis, *Ye might be,*
3. Eſſet, *He might be;* Eſſent, *They might be.*

Perfect. *may have.*

1. Fuĕrim, *I may have been,* Fuĕrĭmus, *We may have been,*
2. Fueris, *Thou mayeſt have been,* Fueritis, *Ye may have been,*
3. Fuerit, *He may have been;* Fuerint, *They may have been.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would,* or *ſhould have;* or *had.*

1. Fuiſſem, *I might have been,* Fuiſſēmus, *We might have been,*
2. Fuiſſes, *Thou mighteſt have been,* Fuiſſetis, *Ye might have been,*
3. Fuiſſet, *He might have been;* Fuiſſent, *They might have been.*

Future. *ſhall have.*

1. Fuĕro, *I ſhall have been,* Fuerĭmus, *We ſhall have been,*
2. Fueris, *Thou ſhalt have been,* Fueritis, *Ye ſhall have been,*
3. Fuerit, *He ſhall have been;* Fuerint, *They ſhall have been.*

Imperative Mode.

2. Es *vel* eſto, *Be thou,* Eſte *vel* eſtōte, *Be ye.*
3. Eſto, *Let him be;* Sunto, *Let them be.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pref. Eſſe, *To be.*
Perf. Fuiſſe, *To have been.*
Fut. Eſſe futurus, -a, -um, *To be about to be.*

(Fuisse futurus, -a, -um, *To have been about to be.*
Participle.
Future. Fŭtūrus, -a, -um, *About to be.*)

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, *or* you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, *&c.* So *ego ămo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, *or* you love; *ille amat*, he loveth *or* loves; *nos amamus*, we love; &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, *or much oftener*, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, *or* you were; *tu sis*, thou mayst be, *or* you may be, *&c.* So *tu amas*, thou lovest, *or* you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, *or* you loved, *&c.*

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*
Amo,	amāre,	amavi,	amatum, *To love.*

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. *love, do love,* or *am loving.*

Sing. 1.	Am-o,	*I love,*
2.	Am-as,	*Thou lovest,* or *you love,*
3.	Am-at,	*He loveth,* or *he loves;*
Plur. 1.	Am-āmus,	*We love,*
2.	Am-atis,	*Ye* or *you love,*
3.	Am-ant,	*They love.*

Imperfect. *loved, did love,* or *was loving.*

Sing. 1.	Am-ābam,	*I loved,*
2.	Am-abas,	*Thou lovedst,*
3.	Am-abat,	*He loved;*
Plur. 1.	Am-abamus,	*We loved,*
2.	Am-abatis,	*Ye* or *you loved,*
3.	Am-abant,	*They loved.*

Perfect. *loved, have loved,* or *did love.*

Sing. 1.	Am-āvi,	*I have loved,*
2.	Am-avisti,	*Thou hast loved,*
3.	Am-avit,	*He hath loved;*
Plur. 1.	Am-avīmus,	*We have loved,*
2.	Am-avistis,	*Ye have loved,*
3.	Am-avērunt, *v.* -avēre,	*They have loved.*

Plu-perfect. *had.*

Sing. 1.	Am-āvĕram,	*I had loved,*
2.	Am-averas,	*Thou hadst loved,*
3.	Am-averat,	*He had loved;*
Plur. 1.	Am-averamus,	*We had loved,*
2.	Am-averatis,	*Ye had loved,*
3.	Am-averant,	*They had loved.*

Future. *shall* or *will.*

Sing. 1.	Am-ābo,	I *shall love,*
2.	Am-abis,	*Thou shalt love,*
3.	Am-abit,	*He shall love;*
Plur. 1.	Am-abĭmus,	*We shall love,*
2.	Am-abitis,	*Ye shall love,*
3.	Am-abunt,	*They shall love.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may* or *can.*

Sing. 1.	Am-em,	*I may love,*
2.	Am-es,	*Thou mayest love,*
3.	Am-et,	*He may love;*
Plur. 1.	Am-ēmus,	*We may love,*
2.	Am-etis,	*Ye may love,*
3.	Am-ent,	*They may love.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Sing. 1.	Am-ārem,	*I might love,*
2.	Am-ares,	*Thou mightst love,*
3.	Am-aret,	*He might love;*
Plur. 1.	Am-aremus,	*We might love,*
2.	Am-aretis,	*Ye might love,*
3.	Am-arent,	*They might love.*

Perfect. *may have.*

Sing. 1. Am-āvĕrim, *I may have loved,*
2. Am-averis, *Thou mayst have loved,*
3. Am-averit, *He may have loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-averĭmus, *We may have loved,*
2. Am-averitis, *Ye may have loved,*
3. Am-averint, *They may have loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would,* or *should have;* or *had.*

Sing. 1. Am-avissem, *I might have loved,*
2. Am-avisses, *Thou mightst have loved,*
3. Am-avisset, *He might have loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-avissemus, *We might have loved,*
2. Am-avissetis, *Ye might have loved,*
3. Am-avissent, *They might have loved.*

Future. *shall have.*

Sing. 1. Am-avero, *I shall have loved,*
2. Am-averis, *Thou shalt have loved,*
3. Am-averit, *He shall have loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-averimus, *We shall have loved,*
2. Am-averitis, *Ye shall have loved,*
3. Am-averint, *They shall have loved.*

Imperative Mode.

Sing. 2. Am-a, *vel* am-ato, *Love thou,* or *do thou love,*
3. Am-ato, *Let him love;*
Plur. 2. Am-ate, *vel* am-atōte, *Love ye,* or *do ye love.*
3. Am-anto, *Let them love.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Am-āre, *To love,*
Perf. Am-avisse, *To have loved,*
Fut. Esse amaturus, -a, -um, *To be about to love.*
Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um, *To have been about to love.*

Participle.

Present, Am-ans, *Loving.*
Future, Am-aturus, -a, -um, *About to love.*

Gerunds.

Nom. Am-andum, *Loving,*
Gen. Am-andi, *Of loving,*

Dat.	Am-ando,	*To loving,*
Acc.	Am-andum,	*Loving,*
Abl.	Am-ando,	*With loving.*

Supine.

Former.	Am-ātum,	*To love,*
Latter.	Am-atu,	*To love,* or *to be loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Indicative.	*Perfect Participle.*	*Infinitive.*
Amor,	amātus,	amāri, *to be loved.*

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. *am.*

Sing. 1.	Am-or,	*I am loved,*
2.	Am-āris, *vel* -āre,	*Thou art loved,*
3.	Am-atur,	*He is loved;*
Plur. 1.	Am-amur,	*We are loved,*
2.	Am-amīni,	*Ye* or *you are loved,*
3.	Am-antur.	*They are loved.*

Imperfect. *was.*

Sing. 1.	Am-ābar,	*I was loved,*
2.	Am-abāris *vel* -abāre,	*Thou wast loved,*
3.	Am-abatur,	*He was loved;*
Plur. 1.	Am-abamur,	*We were loved,*
2.	Am-abamīni,	*Ye were loved,*
3.	Am-abantur,	*They were loved.*

Perfect. *am*; *have been*, or *was.*

Sing. 1.	Amatus sum, *vel* fui,	*I have been loved,*
2.	Amatus es, *v.* fuisti,	*Thou hast been loved,*
3.	Amatus est, *v.* fuit,	*He hath been loved;*
Plur. 1.	Amati sumus, *v.* fuimus,	*We have been loved,*
2.	Amati estis, *v.* fuistis,	*Ye have been loved,*
3.	Amati sunt, fuērunt, *v.* fuēre.	*They have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. *had been*, or *was.*

Sing. 1.	Amatus eram *vel* fueram,	*I had been loved,*
2.	Amatus eras *v.* fueras,	*Thou hadst been loved,*
3.	Amatus erat *v.* fuerat,	*He had been loved;*
Plur. 1.	Amati eramus *v.* fueramus,	*We had been loved,*
2.	Amati eratis *v.* fueratis,	*Ye had been loved,*
3.	Amati erant *v.* fuerant,	*They had been loved.*

Future. *shall*, or *will be.*

Sing. 1. Am-ābor, *I shall be loved,*
2. Am-abĕris *v.* -abĕre, *Thou shalt be loved,*
3. Am-abĭtur, *He shall be loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-abĭmur, *We shall be loved,*
2. Am-abimini, *Ye shall be loved,*
3. Am-abuntur, *They shall be loved.*

Subjunctive mode.

Preſent Tenſe. *may* or *can be.*

Sing. 1. Am-er, *I may be loved,*
2. Am-ēris *vel* -ēre, *Thou mayſt be loved,*
3. Am-etur, *He may be loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-emur, *We may be loved,*
2. Am-emini, *Ye may be loved,*
3. Am-entur, *They may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *ſhould be.*

Sing. 1. Am-arer, *I might be loved,*
2. Am-arēris *v.* -arēre, *Thou mightſt be loved,*
3. Am-aretur, *He might be loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-aremur, *We might be loved,*
2. Am-aremini, *Ye might be loved,*
3. Am-arentur, *They might be loved.*

Perfect. *may have been.*

Sing. 1. Amatus ſim *vel* fuerim, *I may have been loved,*
2. Amatus ſis *v.* fueris, *Thou mayſt have been loved,*
3. Amatus ſit *v.* fuerit, *He may have been loved;*
Plur. 1. Amati ſimus *v.* fuerimus, *We may have been loved,*
2. Amati ſitis *v.* fueritis, *Ye may have been loved,*
3. Amati ſint *vel* fuerint, *They may have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would,* or *ſhould have been*; or *had been.*

Sing. 1. Amatus eſſem *v.* fuiſſem, *I might have been loved,*
2. Amatus eſſes *v.* fuiſſes, *Thou mightſt have been loved,*
3. Amatus eſſet *v.* fuiſſet, *He might have been loved;*
Plur. 1. Amati eſſemus *v.* fuiſſemus, *We might have been loved,*
2. Amati eſſetis *v.* fuiſſetis, *Ye might have been loved,*
3. Amati eſſent *v.* fuiſſent, *They might have been loved.*

Future. *ſhall have been.*

Sing. 1. Amatus fuĕro, *I ſhall have been loved,*

	2. Amatus, fueris,	*Thou shalt have been loved,*
	3. Amatus fuerit,	*He shall have been loved,*
ur.	1. Amati fuĕrĭmus,	*We shall have been loved,*
	2. Amati fueritis,	*Ye shall have been loved,*
	3. Amati fuerint,	*They shall have been loved.*

Imperative Mode.

ng.	2. Am-āre *vel* am-ātor,	*Be thou loved,*
	3. Am-ātor,	*Let him be loved;*
ur.	2. Am-amĭni,	*Be ye loved,*
	3. Am-antor,	*Let them be loved.*

Infinitive Mode.

res.	Am-āre,	*To be loved.*
erf.	Esse *v.* fuisse amatus, -a, -um,	*To have been loved.*
ut.	Am-atum iri,	*To be about to be loved.*

Participle.

Perf.	Am-atus, -a, -um,	*Loved.*
Fut.	Am-andus, -a, -um,	*To be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Dŏceo, dŏcui, doctum, docēre, *To teach.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
res.	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
ıp.	Doc-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
rf.	Doc-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt, *v.* -uere.
lu.	Doc-uĕram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	uerant.
ut.	Doc-ēbo,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebĭmus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

res.	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eatis,	-eant.
ıp.	Doc-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
rf.	Doc-uĕrim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
lu.	Doc-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
ut.	Doc-uĕro,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
res.	Doc-e *vel* -ēto,	-eto;	-ēte *vel* -eote,	-ento.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pref. Doc-ēre.	*Pr.* Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,	1. Doc-tu
Perf. Doc-uisse.	*Fut.* Doc-tūrus,	Doc-endi,	2. Doc-tu
Fut. Esse docturus, -a, -um.		Doc-endo, &c.	
Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Doceor, doctus, docēri, *To be taught.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
Pr. Doc-eor,	-ēris, *vel*-ēre,	-etur;	-emur,	-emĭni,	-entu
Im. Doc-ebar,	-ebāris, *vel*-ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebant

Perf. Doctus sum *vel* fui, doctus es *vel* fuisti, &c.
Plu. Doctus eram *v.* fueram, doctus eras *v.* fueras, &c.

Fut. Doc-ebor,	-ēbĕris, *vel*-ebere,	-ebĭtur;	-ebĭmur,	-ebimini,	-ebun

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Doc-ear,	-eāris, *vel*-eare,	-eatur;	-eamur,	-eamĭni,	-eant
Im. Doc-erer,	-erēris, *vel*-erēre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erent

Perf. Doctus sim *vel* fuerim, doctus sis *vel* fueris, &c.
Plu. Doctus essem *v.* fuissem, doctus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.
Fut. Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus,

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
Pref. Doc-ēre *vel* -ētor,	-etor;	-emĭni,	entor.

Infinitive. *Participles.*

Pref. Doc-eri, *Perf.* Doc-tus, -a, -u
Perf. Esse *v.* fuisse doctus, -a, -um, *Fut.* Doc-endus, -a, -u
Fut. Doctum iri.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, lĕgĕre, *To read*

Indicative Mode.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Pr. Leg-o,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
Im. Leg-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.

Per. Leg-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-ērunt, -ēre
Plu. Leg-ĕram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut. Leg-am,	-es	-et;	-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Leg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Im. Leg-ĕrem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ĕremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Per. Leg-ĕrim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu. Leg-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
Fut. Leg-ĕro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres. Leg-e *vel* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *vel* -ĭtōte,	-unto.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pres. Leg-ĕre,	*Pr.* Leg-ens.	Leg-endum.	1. Lec-tum.
Perf. Leg-isse,	*Fut.* Lec-tūrus.	Leg-endi.	2. Lec-tu.
Fut. Esse lectūrus, -a, -um, Fuisse lecturus, -a, -um.		Leg-endo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lĕgor, lectus, lĕgi, *To be read.*

Indicative Mode.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr. Leg-or,	-ĕris, *vel* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-imur,	-imini,	-untur.
Im. Leg-ebar,	-ebaris, *vel* -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
Per. Lectus sum *vel* fui, lectus es *vel* fuisti, &c.					
Plu. Lectus eram *vel* fueram, lectus eras *vel* fueras, &c.					
Fut. Leg-ar,	-ēris, *vel* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emini,	-entur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Leg-ar,	-aris, *vel* -are,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
Im. Leg-ĕrer,	-ĕreris, *vel* ĕrēre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.
Perf. Lectus sim *vel* fuerim, lectus sis *vel* fueris, &c.					
Plu. Lectus essem *v.* fuissem, lectus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.					
Fut. Lectus fuero, lectus fueris, lectus fuerit, &c.					

Imperative Mode.

Pres. Leg-ĕre *vel* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-imini,	-untor.	

Infinitive.	*Participles.*
Pres. Leg-ĭ.	*Perf.* Lec-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Esse *v.* fuisse lectus, -a, -um.	*Fut.* Leg-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Lectum iri.	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *To hear.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	*Plur.* 1.	2.	3.
Pr.	Aud-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
Im.	Aud-iēbam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
Per.	Aud-īvi,	-īvisti,	-īvit;	-īvīmus,	-īvistis,	-īvērunt, *v.* -īvēre.
Pl.	Aud-ivĕram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
Fu.	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
Im.	Aud-īrem,	-ires,	-iret;	-iremus,	-iretis,	-irent.
Per.	Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverīmus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
Pl.	Aud-ivissem,	-ivisses,	-ivisset;	-ivissemus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent.
Fu.	Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
Pr.	Aud-i, *vel* -īto,	-īto;	-īte, *vel* -itōte,	-iunto.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pr. Aud-īre.	*Pr.* Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.	1. Aud-itum.
Per. Aud-ivisse.	*Fu.* Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.	2. Aud-itu.
Fut. Esse auditurus, -a, -um, Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.		Aud-iendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, audītus, audīri, *To be heard.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr.	Aud-ior,	-īris, *vel* -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmini,	-iuntur.
Im.	Aud-iebar,	-iebaris, *vel* -iebare,	-iebatur;	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebantur.

Perf. Auditus fum *vel* fui, Auditus es *v.* fuifti, &c.
Plu. Auditus eram *v.* fueram, Auditus eras *v.* fueras, &c.
Fut. Aud-iar, -ieris, *vel* -iere, -ietur; -iemur, -iemini, -ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Aud-iar, -iaris, *vel* -iare, -iatur; -iamur, -iamini, -iantur.
Im. Aud-irer, -ireris, *vel* -irere, -iretur; -iremur, -iremini, -irentur.
Perf. Auditus fim *vel* fuerim, auditus fis *v.* fueris, &c.
Plu. Auditus eſſem *v.* fuiſſem, auditus eſſes *v.* fuiſſes, &c.
Fut. Auditus fuero, auditus fueris, &c.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
Pr. Aud-īre, *vel* -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmĭni,	-iuntor.

Infinitive. *Participles.*

Pr. Aud-iri. *Per.* Aud-ītus, -a, -um.
Per. Eſſe *v.* fuiſſe aud-itus, -a, -um. *Fu.* Aud-iendus, -a, -um.
Fu. Aud-ītum iri.

FORMATION of VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the reſt are formed; namely, *o* of the preſent, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the ſupine, and *re* of the infinitive.

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as,

AM-O, -em; AM-AVI, -eram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; AMAT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; AM-ARE, -abam, -abo, -arem, -a, -ans, -andum, di, do; -andus.

DOC-EO, -eam; DOC-UI, -ueram, &c.; DOCT-UM, -u, urus, -us; DOC-ERE, -ebam, -ebo, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, di, do, -endus.

LEG-O, -am; LEG-I, -eram, &c.; LECT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; LEG-ERE, -ebam, -ĕrem, -e, -ens, -endum, &c.

AUD-IO, -iam; AUD-IVI, -iveram, &c.; AUDIT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; AUD-IRE, -iebam, -irem, -i, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus. So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, CAP-IO, -iam; CEP-I, -eram, &c.; CAPT-UM, -u, &c.; CAP-ERE, -iebam, -ĕrem, -e, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.

The paſſive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

A verb is commonly ſaid to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, becauſe from them all the reſt are derived.

The firſt perſon of the Preſent of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, becauſe from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the ſame, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am*, in *am-o*. The reſt are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus*, in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting theſe before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenſes.

Signification of the Tenſes in the various Modes.

The tenſes formed from the preſent of the indicative or infinitive ſignify in general the continuance of an action or paſſion, or repreſent them as preſent at ſome particular time: the other tenſes expreſs an action or paſſion completed; but not always ſo abſolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the ſame action or paſſion; thus, *amo*, I love, do love, *or* am loving; *amăb-am*, I loved, did love, *or* was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, *or* have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the paſſive voice; *amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, *or* in being loved, &c.

Paſt time in the paſſive voice is expreſſed ſeveral different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *ſum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus ſum*, I am *or* have been loved, *or oftener*, I was loved.
Amatus fui, I have been loved, *or*, I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was *or* had been loved.
Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus ſim*, I may be *or* may have been loved.
Amatus fuerim, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eſſem*, I might, could, would, *or* ſhould be *or* have been loved.
Amatus fuiſſem, I might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been loved; *or*, I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I ſhall have been loved.

The verb *ſum* is alſo employed to expreſs future time in the indicative mode, both active and paſſive; thus,

Amaturus ſum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, *or* I will love. We chiefly uſe this form, when ſome purpoſe or intention is ſignified.

Amatus ero, I ſhall be loved.

Obſ. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, becauſe we commonly find them ſo placed in the claſſics.

Obſ. 2. In theſe compound tenſes the learner ſhould be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different ſubſtantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus eſt*, he is *or* was loved, when applied to a man; *amata eſt*, ſhe was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum eſt*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati ſunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, *&c.* The connecting of ſyntax, ſo far as is neceſſary, with the inflexion of nouns and verbs, ſeems to be the moſt proper method of teaching both.

Obſ. 3. The paſt time and participle perfect in Engliſh are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenſes in Latin which they are uſed to expreſs. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a ſenſe different from what it has when put for *amavi*: ſo *amor*, and *amatus ſum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus ſim*, *&c.* In the one, *loved* is taken in a preſent, in the other, in a paſt ſenſe. This ambiguity ariſes from the defective nature of the Engliſh verb.

Obſ. 4. The tenſes of the ſubjunctive mode may be variouſly rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a ſentence. They are often expreſſed in Engliſh as the ſame tenſes of the indicative, and ſometimes one tenſe apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quaſi intelligant, qualis ſit*, As if they underſtood, what kind of perſon he is. Cic. *In facinus juraſſe putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an ſilcam?* Shall I ſpeak out, or be ſilent? *Nec vos arguerim, Teucri*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. *Hunc tantum dolorem ſi ſperare potui, et perferre potero*: for *potuiſſem* and *poſſem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why ſhould I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, you ſhould have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, ought to have ſtood to your word, Virg *Citius crediderim*, I ſhould ſooner believe, Juv. *Hauſerit enſis*, The ſword would have deſtroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or ſuppoſe they were angry. *Si id feciſſet*, If he did or ſhould do that, Cic. The ſame promiſcuous uſe of the tenſes ſeems alſo

to take place ſometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the ſubjunctive; as, *Animus meminiſſe horret, luctuque refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuiſſet*, Id. *Invidia dilapſa erat*, for *fuiſſet*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *veniſti*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Epheſum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu ſi hic ſis, aliter ſentias*, Ter. for, *eſſes* and *ſentires*. *Cato affirmat, ſe vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum eſſe*, Cic. *Perſuadet Caſtico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæſ.

Obſ. 5. The future of the ſubjunctive, and alſo of the indicative, is often rendered by the preſent of the ſubjunctive in Engliſh; as, *niſi hoc faciet* or *fecerit*, unleſs he do this. Ter.

Obſ. 6. Inſtead of the imperative we often uſe the preſent of the ſubjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And alſo the future both of the indicative and ſubjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne fecĕris*, do not do it; *valebis, meque amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The preſent time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expreſſed under the ſame form. All the varieties of paſt and future time are expreſſed by the other two tenſes. But in order properly to exemplify the tenſes of the infinitive mode, we muſt put an accuſative, and ſome other verb, before each of them: thus,

Dicit me ſcrĭbĕre; he ſays *that* I write, do write, *or* am writing.
Dixit me ſcribĕre; he ſaid *that* I wrote, did write, *or* was writing.
Dicit me ſcripſiſſe; he ſays *that* I wrote, did write, *or* have written.
Dixit me ſcripſiſſe; he ſaid *that* I had written.
Dicit me ſcripturum eſſe; he ſays *that* I will write.
Dixit nos ſcripturos eſſe; he ſaid *that* we would write.
Dicit nos ſcripturos fuiſſe; he ſays *that* we would have written.
Dicit literas ſcribi; he ſays *that* letters are written, writing, a writing, *or* in writing.
Dixit literas ſcribi; he ſaid *that* letters were writing, *or* written.
Dicit literas ſcriptas eſſe; he ſays *that* letters are *or* were written.
Dicit literas ſcriptas fuiſſe, he ſays *that* letters have been written.
Dixit literas ſcriptas fuiſſe; he ſaid *that* letters had been written.
Dicit literas ſcriptum iri; he ſays *that* letters will be written.
Dixit literas ſcriptum iri; he ſaid *that* letters would be written.

The future, *ſcriptum iri*, is made up of the former ſupine, and the infinitive paſſive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is ſometimes expreſſed by a *periphrăſis* or circumlocution; thus, *ſcio fore* vel *futurum eſſe ut ſcribant,—ut literæ ſcribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore* vel *futurum eſſe ut ſcriberent,—ut literæ ſcriberentur*;

I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literæ scriberentur;* I knew that letters would have been written. This form is neceſſary in verbs which want the ſupine.

Obſ. 7. The different tenſes, when joined with any expediency or neceſſity, are thus expreſſed:

Scribendum eſt mihi, puero, nobis, &c. *literas;* I, the boy, we, &c. muſt write letters.

Scribendum fuit mihi; I muſt have written.

Scribendum erit mihi; I ſhall be obliged to write.

Scio ſcribendum eſſe mihi literas; I know that I muſt write letters.

—— *Scribendum fuiſſe mihi;* —— that I muſt have written.

Dixit ſcribendum fore mihi; He ſaid that I would be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus*,

Literæ ſunt ſcribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus, &c. or *a me, puero,* &c.; Letters are to be, *or* muſt be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literæ ſcribendæ erant, fuerunt, erunt,* &c. *Si literæ ſcribendæ ſint, eſſent, forent,* &c. *Scio literas ſcribendas eſſe;* I know *that* letters are to be, *or* muſt be written. *Scivi literas ſcribendas fuiſſe;* I knew *that* letters ought to have been, *or* muſt have been written.

Note. Moſt of the ſimple tenſes of a verb in Latin may be expreſſed, as in Engliſh, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *ſum*; as, *ſum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving; *eram amans*, for *amābam*, &c.; *fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut ſis ſciens*, for *ut ſcias*, Ter. Only the tenſes in the active which come from the preterite, and thoſe in the paſſive which come from the preſent, cannot be properly expreſſed in this manner; becauſe the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle preſent paſſive. This manner of expreſſion however does not often occur.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and ſimple verbs form the preterite and ſupine in the ſame manner; as,

Vŏco, vŏcāvi, vŏcātum, to call: ſo *revŏco, revŏcāvi, revŏcātum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the ſimple verb in the preterite doubles the firſt ſyllable of the preſent, the compounds loſe the former ſyllable; as, *pello, pĕpŭli*, to beat; *repello, repŭli*, never *repĕpŭli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, ſto, diſco*, and *poſco*, follow the general rule; thus, *ediſco, edidĭci*, to get by heart, *depoſco, depŏpoſci*, to demand: So, *præcurro, præcucurri; repungo, repupŭgi.*

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *făcio, fēci, factum*, to make: *perfĭcio, perfēci, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *hăbeo, plăceo, săpio, sălio*, and *stătuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvi* in the preterite, *ātum* in the supine; as,

creāvi, creātum, to create; *păro, părāvi, părātum*, to prepare.

Exc. 1. *Do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre*, to give: so *venundo*, to ; *circundo*, to surround; *pessundo*, to overthrow; *satisto*, to give surety; *venundĕdi, venundătum, venundăre*, &c. The other compounds of *do* are of the third conj.

Sto, stĕti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stĭti, stĭtum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *præsto, præstĭti, præstĭtum*, or *præstātum*, to excel. So *ex-, ad-, con-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto.*

Exc. 2. *Lăvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lăvātum*, to wash.

Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum, or *pōtātum*, to drink.

Jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; fut. part. *juvaturus*. So *adjŭvo.*

Exc. 3. *Cŭbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum*, to lie. So *ac-, ex-, ac-, re-cŭbo.* The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dŏmo, dŏmui, dŏmĭtum, to subdue. So *e-, per-dŏmo.*

Sŏno, sŏnui, sŏnĭtum, to sound. So *af-, circum-, con-, dif-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-sŏno.*

Tŏno, tŏnui, tŏnĭtum, to thunder. So *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, re-tŏno.* Horace has *intonatus.*

Vĕto, vĕtui, vĕtĭtum, to forbid.

Crĕpo, crĕpui, crĕpĭtum, to make a noise. So *con-, in-, per-, re-crĕpo: discrĕpo* has rather *discrĕpāvi.*

Exc. 4. *Frĭco, frĭcui, frictum*, to rub. So *af-, cir-, cum-,*

con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frĭco. But ſome of theſe have alſo *atum.*

Sĕco, sĕcui, ſectum, to cut. So *circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, re-, ſub-sĕco.*

Nĕco, necui, or *nĕcavi, nĕcātum,* to kill. So *inter-, enĕco:* but theſe have oftener *ectum, enectum, internectum.*

Mĭco, mĭcui, —— to glitter. So *inter-, pro-mĭco. Emĭco* has *emĭcui, emĭcātum; dimĭco, dimĭcāvi, dimĭcātum,* rarely *dimĭcui,* to fight.

Exc. 5. Theſe three want both pret. and ſup. *lăbo,* to fall or faint; *nexo,* to bind; and *plĭco,* to fold.

Plĭco, compounded with a noun, or with the prepoſitions *re, ſub,* has *āvi, ātum;* as, *duplĭco, duplĭcavi, duplĭcatum,* to double. So *multi-, ſup-, re-plĭco.*

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum,* or *ui* and *ĭtum;* as, *applĭco, applĭcui, applĭcĭtum,* or *āvi, ātum,* to apply. So *im-, com-plĭco. Explĭco,* to unfold, has commonly *explicui, explĭcitum;* but when it ſignifies to explain or interpret, *explĭcāvi, explĭcātum.*

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the ſecond conjugation have *ui* and *ĭtum;* as, *habeo, habui, habitum,* to have.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the ſupine; as, *āreo, ārui,* to be dry.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the ſupine, and are regularly conjugated: *Văleo,* to be in health; and *æqui-, con-, e-, in-, præ-văleo; plăceo,* to pleaſe; and *com-, per-placeo; diſplĭceo,* to diſpleaſe: *Căreo,* to want; *pāreo,* to appear, to obey; and *ap-, com-pāreo: Jăceo,* to lie; and *ad-, circum-, inter-, ob-, præ-, ſub-, ſuper-jăceo: Căleo,* to be warm; and *con-, in-, ob-, per-, re-căleo: nŏceo,* to hurt; *dŏleo,* to be grieved; and *con-, de-, in-, per-dŏleo: Coălco,* to grow together. *Lĭceo,* which in the active ſignifies, to be valued, to be lawful; and, what is ſingular, in the paſſive, to bid a price. *Lăteo,* to lurk, the compounds of which want the ſupine, *delĭteo, inter-, ſub-lateo;* as likewiſe do thoſe of *tăceo, -cui, -cĭtum,* to be ſilent, *con-, ob-, re-tĭceo.*

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Timeo*, to fear; *sĭleo*, to conceal; *arceo*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo, exercui, exercĭtum*, to exercise. So *co-erceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Jŭbeo, jussi, jussum to order. So *inde-jŭbeo*, to bail or be surety for.

Sorbeo, sorbui, sorptum, to sup. So *ab-, ex-, re-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi, exsorpsi: Exsorptum, resorptum*, are not in use.

Dŏceo, dŏcui, doctum, to teach. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, sub-dŏceo*.

Misceo, miscui, mistum, or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-, com-, im-, inter-, per-, re-misceo*.

Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, to stroak. So *ad-, circum-, com-, de-, per-, re-mulceo*.

Lūceo, luxi, —— to shine. So *al-, circum-, col-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-*, or *pel-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, transl-lūceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

Vĭdeo, vidi, vīsum, to see. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-video*.

Sĕdeo, sēdi, sessum, to sit. So *as-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, re-, sub-sĭdeo: Circumsĭdeo*, or *circumsĕdeo, supersĕdeo*. But *de-, dis-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-sideo*, seem to want the supine.

Strīdeo, strīdi, —— to make a noise.

Pendeo, pĕpendi, pensum, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

Mordeo, momordi, morsum, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

Spondeo, spŏpondi, sponsum, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo*.

Tondeo, tŏtondi, tonsum, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo*; but the compounds do not double the first syllable in the preterite; thus, *attondi, &c.*

Rideo, rīsi, rīsum, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

Suādeo, ſuāſi, ſuaſum, to adviſe. So *dis-, per-ſuadeo.*

Ardeo, arſi, arſum, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo.*

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO:*

Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increaſe. So *ad-, ex-augeo.*

Lūgeo, luxi, —— to mourn. So *e-, prō-, ſub-lugeo.*

Frīgeo, frixi, —— to be cold. So *per-, re-frīgeo.*

Tergeo, terſi, terſum, to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo.*

Mulgeo, mulſi, mulſum, or *mulctum*, to milk. So *e-, im-mulgeo.*

Indulgeo, indulſi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, urſi, —— to preſs. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, ſub-, ſuper-urgeo.*

Fulgeo, fulſi, —— to ſhine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, ſuper-fulgeo.*

Turgeo, turſi, —— to ſwell. *Algeo, alſi,* —— to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO:*

Vieo, viēvi, viētum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a veſſel.

Cieo, (cīvi) cītum, to rouſe. So, *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cieo.* *Cīvi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So *af-, de-fleo.*

Compleo, complēvi, compētum, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo; de-, ex-, im-, adim-, op-, re-, ſup-pleo.*

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to deſtroy, to blot out.

Oleo, to ſmell, has *ŏlui, ŏlĭtum.* So likewiſe its compounds which have a ſimilar ſignification; *ob-, per-, red-, ſub-ŏleo.* But ſuch of the compounds as have a different ſignification make *ēvi* and *ētum;* thus, *exŏleo, exŏlēvi, exŏlētum*, to fade. So *inŏleo*, to grow into uſe; *obsŏleo*, to grow out of uſe. *Abŏleo*, to aboliſh, has *abŏlēvi, abŏlĭtum;* and *adŏleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adŏlēvi, adultum.*

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO*, and *SEO.*

Măneo, manſi, manſum, to ſtay. So *per-, re-măneo.*

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to ſpin. So *per-neo.*

Tĕneo, tĕnui, tentum, to hold. So *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, ſuſ-tĭneo.* But *attĭneo, pertĭneo*, are not uſed in the ſupine; and ſeldom *abſtĭneo.*

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, to throw. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo.*

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo.*

Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast. So *extorreo.*

Censeo, censui, censum, to judge. So *ac-, per-, re-censeo,* to review; *succenseo,* to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO,* have *vi, tum;* as, *moveo, mōvi, mōtum,* to move: *Foveo, fovi, fotum,* to cherish. So *con-, re-foveo.* So *voveo,* to vow, or wish, and *devoveo.*

Făveo, to favour; has *fāvi, fautum;* and *căveo,* to beware of, *cāvi, cautum.* So *præ-căveo.*

Neuter verbs in *veo,* want the supine; as, *păveo, pāvi,* to be afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, makes *ferbui.* So *de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-ferveo.*

Connīveo, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi.*

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo,* to suck milk; *līveo,* to be black and blue; *scăteo,* to abound; *renīdeo,* to shine; *mœreo,* to be sorrowful; *æveo,* to desire; *polleo,* to be able; *flāveo,* to be yellow; *denseo,* to grow thick; *glabreo,* to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo,* to be bald; *cēveo,* to wag the tail; *hebeo,* to be dull; *uveo,* to be moist; and some others.

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

I O.

1. *Făcio, fēci, factum,* to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a: are-, cale-, made-, tepe-, bene-, male-, satis-făcio, &c.* But those compounded with a preposition which change *a* into *i,* have *ectum;* as, *affĭcio, affēci, affectum.* So *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, suf-fĭcio.*

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation;

as, *Amplifico, sacrifico, terrifico, magnifico; gratificor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *ludificor*, to mock.

Jăcio, jēci, jactum, to throw. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jĭcio*; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spĕcio* and *lăcio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi* and *ectum*; as, *aspĭcio, aspexi, aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, re-, retro-, su-spĭcio.*

Allĭcio, allexi, allectum, to allure. So *il-, pel-lĭcio*; but *elicio* to draw out, has *elicui, elicitum.*

2. *Fodio, fōdi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, transf-fodio.*

Fŭgio, fūgi, fugitum, to fly. So *au-*, (for *ab-*,) *con-, de-, dif-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, transf-fŭgio.*

3. *Căpio, cēpi, captum*, to take. So *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-cipio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-căpio.*

Răpio, răpui, raptum, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, præ-, pro-, sur-ripio*; *ripui, -reptum.*

Săpio, săpui, —— to savour, to be wise. So *consipio*, to be well in one's wits; *desipio*, to be foolish; *resipio*, to come to one's wits.

Cŭpio, cupīvi, cupītum, to desire. So *con-, dis-, per-cŭpio.*

4. *Părio, pĕpĕri, paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quătio, quassi, quassum, to shake: but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*, as, *concŭtio, concussi, concussum.* So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, reper-, succŭtio.*

U O has *ui, ŭtum*; as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to shew, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-, red-arguo*, to confute. So,

Acuo, Exacuo, *to sharpen.*
Induo, *to put on clothes.*
Exuo, *to put off clothes.*
Statuo, *to set* or *place, to ordain:*
Con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-stituo.

Imbuo, *to wet* or *imbrue, to season* or *instruct.*
Minuo, *to lessen:* Com-, de-, di-, im-minuo.
Spuo, *to spit:* Con-, de-, ex-, inspuo.
Sternuo, *to sneeze.*
Suo, *to sew* or *stitch, to tack together:* As-, circum-, con-, dis-, in-, præ-, re-suo.
Tribuo, *to give, to divide:* At-, con-, dis-, re-tribuo.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum,* to flow. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, transfluo.*

Struo, struxi, structum, to put in order, to build. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-struo.*

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, luitum,* to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum;* as, *abluo, ui, ūtum,* to wash away, to purify. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo.*

Ruo, rui, ruitum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ŭtum;* as, *diruo, dirui, dirŭtum,* to overthrow. So *e-, ob-, pro-, sub-ruo. Corruo,* and *irruo* want the supine; and likewise do *mĕtuo,* to fear; *pluo,* to rain; *ingruo,* to assail; *congruo,* to agree; *respuo,* to reject; *annuo,* to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo;* *abnuo,* to refuse; *innuo,* to nod or beckon with the head; *renuo,* to deny. *Respuo, respui,* to reject, to slight.

BO has *bi, bitum;* as,

Bibo, bibi, bibitum, to drink. So *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præbibo.*

Exc. 1. *Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum,* to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, transscrībo.*

Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo.* Instead of *nupsi,* we often find *nupta sum.*

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cubo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accŭbui, accŭbitum,* to sit down at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superincumbo.*

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi,* to scratch; *lambo, lambi,* to lick. So *ad-, circum-, de-, prælambo.*

Glūbo and *deglubo*, to ſtrip, to flay, want both preterite and ſupine.

CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to ſay. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dīco.*

Dūco, duxi, ductum, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſe-, ſub-, tra-*, or *tranſ-dūco.*

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, re-vinco.*

Parco, pĕperci, parſum, ſeldom *parſi, parſitum*, to ſpare. So *com-parco*, or *com-perco*, which is ſeldom uſed.

Ico, īci, ictum, to ſtrike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

Noſco, nōvi, nōtum, to know; future part. *noſcitūrus.* So

Dignoſco, *to diſtinguiſh*; ignoſco, *to pardon*; *alſo* inter-, per-, præ-noſco.

Creſco, *to grow*: Con-, de-, ex-, re-, *and without the ſupine*, ac-, in-, per-, pro-, ſuc-, ſuper-creſco.

Quieſco, *to reſt*: Ac-, con-, inter-, re-quieſco.

Sciſco, *to ordain*: ad-, *or* aſciſco, *to take to, to aſſociate*; conſciſco, *to vote, to commit*; *alſo* præ-, re-ſciſco; deſciſco, *to revolt.*

Sueſco, *to be accuſtomed*: Aſ-, con-, de-, in-ſueſco.

Exc. 1. *Agnoſco, agnōvi, agnĭtum*, to own; *cognoſco, cognōvi, cognĭtum*, to know. So *recognoſco*, to review.

Paſco, pāvi, paſtum, to feed. So *com-, de-paſco.*

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the ſupine.

Diſco, dĭdĭci, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, præ-diſco.*

Poſco, pŏpoſci, to demand. So *ap-, de-, ex-, re-poſco.*

Compeſco, compeſcui, to ſtop or reſtrain. So *diſpeſco, diſpeſcui*, to ſeparate.

Exc. 3. *Gliſco*, to grow; *fatiſco*, to be weary; and likewiſe inceptive verbs want both preterite and ſupine; as *ārēſco*, to become dry. But theſe verbs borrow the

preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ardesco*, to grow hot, *arsi*, *arsum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di*, *sum*; as,

Scando, *scandi*, *scansum*, to climb; *ĕdo*, *ēdi*, *ēsum*, to eat. So,

Ascendo, *to mount.* Descendo *to go down*: Con-, e-, ex-, in-, tran-scendo.

Accendo, *to kindle*: In-, suc-cendo.

Cūdo, *to forge, to stamp or coin*: Ex-, in-, per-, pro-, re-cūdo.

Defendo, *to defend.*

Offendo, *to strike against, to offend.*

Mando, *to chew*: Præ-, re-mando.

Prehendo, *to take hold of*: Ap-, com-, de-prehendo.

Exc. 1. *dīvĭdo*, *dīvīsi*, *dīvīsum*, to divide.

Rādo, *rāsi*, *rāsum*, to shave. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *sub-rādo.*

Claudo, *clausi*, *clausum*, to close. So *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *se-clūdo.*

Plaudo, *plausi*, *plausum*, to clap hands for joy. So *ap-*, *circum-plaudo*: also *com-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *sup-plōdo.*

Lūdo, *lūsi*, *lūsum*, to play. So *ab-*, *al-*, *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-lūdo.*

Trūdo, *trūsi*, *trūsum*, to thrust. So *abs-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-trūdo.*

Lædo, *læsi*, *læsum*, to hurt. So *al-*, *col-*, *e-*, *il-līdo.*

Rōdo, *rōsi*, *rōsum*, to gnaw. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-rōdo.*

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine: but its compounds have *si*, *sum*; as, *invādo*, *invāsi*, *invāsum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-*, *e-*, *super-vādo.*

Cēdo, *cessi*, *cessum*, to yield. So *abs-*, *ac-*, *ante-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *se-*, *suc-cēdo.*

Exc. 2. *Pando*, *pandi*, *passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *op-*, *præ-*, *re-pando.*

Comĕdo, *comēdi*, *comēsum*, or *comestum*, to eat. But *ĕdo* itself and the rest of its compounds have always *ēsum*; as, *ad-*, *amb-*, *ex-*, *peri-*, *sub-*, *super-ĕdo.*

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, to pour forth. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, transfundo.*

Scindo, scĭdi, scissum, to cut. So *af-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, transcindo.*

Findo, fĭdi, fissum, to cleave. So *con-, dif-, infindo.*

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tŭtŭdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tŭdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contŭdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-, ob-, per-, retundo.*

Cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cĭdo*: except *incĭdo, incĭdi, incasum*, to fall in; *recĭdo, recĭdi, recasum*, to fall back; and *occĭdo, occĭdi, occasum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cĕcīdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*, to cut about. So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, re-, suc-cīdo.*

Tendo, tĕtendi, tensum, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, ob-, præ-, protendo.* But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, which has commonly *ostensum.*

Pēdo, pĕpēdi, pedĭtum, to break wind backwards. So *oppēdo.*

Pendo, pĕpendi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, suspendo.*

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dĭdi*, and *dĭtum*; as, *abdo, abdĭdi, abdĭtum*, to hide. So *ad-, con-, de-, di-, e-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, trado*: also *decon-, recon-do*; and *coad-, superad-do*; and *deper-, disper-do.* To these add *crēdo, crēdĭdi, crēdĭtum*, to believe; *vendo, vendĭdi, vendĭtum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi, abscondĭtum*, rarely, *abscondĭdi.*

Exc. 5. Theſe three want the ſupine: *ſtrīdo, ſtrīdi,* to creak; *rŭdo, rūdi,* to bray like an aſs; and *sīdo, sīdi,* to ſink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and ſupine from *sĕdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, conſeſſum,* to ſit down. So *aſ-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, re-, ſub-sīdo.*

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo,* in ſome reſpects reſemble one another, and therefore ſhould be carefully diſtinguiſhed; as, *concido, concēdo, concīdo; consīdo* and *consĭdeo; conſcindo, conſcendo,* &c.

GO, GUO has *xi, ctum;* as

Rĕgo, rexi, rectum, to rule, to govern; *dirĭgo, -exi, -ectum,* to direct; *arrigo,* & *erigo, -exi, -ectum,* to raiſe up; *corrĭgo,* to correct; *porrĭgo,* to ſtretch out; *ſubrĭgo,* to raiſe up. So

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, *to gird, to ſurround:* Ac-, diſ-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, ſuc-cingo.

Fligo, *to daſh* or *beat upon:* Af-, con-, in-fligo: alſo profligo, *to rout, of the firſt conj.*

Jungo, *to join;* abjungo, *to ſeparate:* Ad-, con-, de-, diſ-, in-, inter-, ſe-, ſub-jungo.

Lingo, *to lick:* de-, e-lingo; & pollingo, *to anoint a dead body.*

Mungo, *to wipe or clean the noſe:* emungo, *to wipe, to cheat.*

Plango, *to beat, to lament.*

Stingo, *or* Stinguo, *to daſh out, to extinguiſh:* Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-ſtinguo.

Tĕgo, *to cover:* Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-tĕgo.

Tingo, *or* Tinguo, *to dip* or *dye;* Con-, in-tingo.

Ungo, *or* unguo, *to anoint:* ex-, in-, per-, ſuper-ungo.

Exc. 1. *Surgo,* to riſe, has *ſurrexi, ſurrectum.* So *aſ-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-ſurgo.*

Pergo, perrexi, perrectum, to go forward.

Stringo, ſtrinxi, ſtrictum, to bind, to ſtrain, to lop. So *ad-, con-, de-, diſ-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, ſub-ſtringo.*

Fingo, finxi, fictum, to feign. So *aſ-, con-, ef-, re-fingo.*

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint. So *ap-, de-pingo.*

Exc. 2. *Frango, frēgi, fractum,* to break. So *con-, de-, diſ-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, ſuſ-fringo.*

Ago, ĕgi, actum, to do, to drive. So *ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, ſub-, tranſ-, tranſad-ĭgo:* and *circum-, per-ăgo; cōgo*, for *coăgo*.

Theſe three compounds of *ăgo* want the ſupine: *ſatăgo, ſatēgi*, to be buſy about a thing; *prodĭgo, prodēgi*, to laviſh, or ſpend riotouſly; *dēgo* for *deăgo; degi*, to live or dwell. *Ambĭgo*, to doubt, alſo wants the preterite.

Lĕgo, legi, lectum, to gather, to read. So *al-, per-, præ-, re-, ſub-lĕgo:* alſo *col-, de-, e-, recol-, ſe-ligo*, which change *e* into *i*.

Diligo, to love, has *dilexi, dilectum*. So *negligo*, to neglect; and *intelligo*, to underſtand; but *negligo* has ſometimes *neglegi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango, tĕtigi, tactum*, to touch. So *at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo*.

Pungo, pŭpŭgi, punctum, to prick. The compounds have *punxi;* as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum*. So *diſ-, ex-, inter-pungo:* but *repungo* has *repunxi* or *repŭpŭgi*.

Pango, panxi, pactum, to fix, to drive in, to compoſe: or *pĕpigi*, which comes from the obſolete verb *păgo*, to bargain, for which we uſe *paciſcor*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pegi;* as, *compingo, compegi, compactum*, to put together. So *im-, op-, ſup-pingo*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo, ſparſi, ſparſum*, to ſpread. So *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-ſpergo*.

Mergo, merſi, merſum, to dip, or plunge. So *de-, e-, im-, ſub-mergo*.

Tergo, terſi, terſum, to wipe or clean. So *abſ-, de-, ex-, per-tergo*.

Figo, fixi, fixum, to fix or faſten. So *af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, ſuf-, tranſ-figo*.

Frīgo, frixi, frixum, or *frictum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi,* to sound a trumpet; *ningo* or *ninguo, ninxi,* to snow; *ango, anxi,* to vex. *Vergo,* to incline or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-, de-, in-vergo.*

HO, JO.

1. *Trăho, traxi, tractum,* to draw. So *abs-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trăho.*

Vĕho, vexi, vectum, to carry. So *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-vĕho.*

2. *Mejo,* or *mingo, minxi, mictum,* to make water. So *immejo.*

LO.

1. *Cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum,* to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ, re-cŏlo:* and likewise *occŭlo, occului, occultum,* to hide.

Consŭlo, consului, consultum, to advise, to consult.

Alo, alui, alitum, or contracted *altum,* to nourish.

Mŏlo, molui, molitum, to grind. So *com-, e-, permŏlo.*

The compounds of *cello,* which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui,* to excel. *Percello,* to astonish, has *percŭli, perculsum.*

Pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, to thrust. So *ap-, as-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello: appŭli,* &c.

Fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, to deceive. But *refallo, refelli,* to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli,* or *vulsi, vulsum,* to pull or pinch. So *a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello.* But *de-, di-, per-vello,* have rather *velli.*

Sallo, salli, salsum, to salt. *Psallo, psalli,* —— to play on a musical instrument.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustuli* and *sublatum; Extollo, extŭli, ela-*

tum; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor ſupine.

MO has *ui*, *itum*; as,

Gĕmo, *gĕmui*, *gemitum*, to groan. So *ag-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *re-gemo*.

Frĕmo fremui, *fremitum*, to rage or roar. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *per-fremo*.

Vŏmo, *evŏmo*, *-ui*, *-itum*, to vomit or ſpew, to caſt up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo*, *dempſi*, *demptum*, to take away.

Prōmo, *prompſi*, *promptum*, to bring out. So *de-*, *ex-prōmo*.

Sūmo, *ſumpſi*, *ſumptum*, to take. So *ab-*, *aſ-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *tran-sūmo*.

Cōmo, *compſi*, *comptum*, to deck or dreſs.

Theſe verbs are alſo uſed without the *p*; as, *demſi*, *demtum*; *ſumſi*, *ſumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Emo*, *emi*, *emptum*, to buy. So *ad-*, *dir-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *red-imo* and *co-ĕmo*.

Prĕmo, *preſſi*, *preſſum*, to preſs. So *ap-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *per-*, *re-*, *ſup-primo*.

Trĕmo, *trĕmui*, to tremble, wants the ſupine. So *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-trĕmo*.

NO.

1. *Pōno*, *pŏſui*, *pŏſitum*, to put or place. So *ap-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *op-*, *poſt-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſe-*, *ſup-*, *ſuper-*, *ſuperim-*, *tranſ-pōno*.

Gigno, *gĕnui*, *gĕnitum*, to beget. So *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-gigno*.

Căno, *cĕcini*, *cantum*, to ſing. But the compounds have *cinui* and *centum*; as, *accino*, *accinui*, *accentum*, to ſing in concert. So *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *ſuc-cino*; *oc-cino* and *oc-căno*; *re-cino* and *re-căno*.

Temno, *tempſi*, *temptum*, to deſpiſe. So *contemno*: But the preterite and ſupine of the ſimple verb are ſcarcely uſed.

2. *Sperno, sprēvi, spretum,* to disdain or slight. So *desperno.*

Sterno, stravi, stratum, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, sub-sterno.*

Sino, sīvi, or *sii, situm,* to permit. So *desino, desīvi,* oftener *desii, desitum,* to leave off.

Lino, līvi, or *levi, litum,* to anoint or daub. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, re, sub-, subter-, super-, superil-lino.*

Cerno, crēvi, seldom *cretum,* to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, se-cerno.*

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum;* as, *Carpo, carpsi, carptum,* to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, pro-cerpo.*

Clĕpo, *to steal.*

Rēpo, *to creep:* Ad-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-rēpo.

Scalpo, *to scratch* or *engrave.* So circum-, ex-scalpo.

Sculpo, *to grave* or *carve.* So ex-, in-sculpo.

Serpo, *to creep as a serpent.*

Exc. 1. *Strĕpo, strĕpui, strĕpitum,* to make a noise. So *ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-strepo.*

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum,* to break. So *ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, ir-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-rumpo.*

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO, viz.*

Cŏquo, coxi, coctum, to boil. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-cŏquo.*

Linquo, līqui, —— to leave. The compounds have *lictum;* as, *relinquo, relīqui, relictum,* to forsake. So *de-,* and *dere-linquo.*

RO.

1. *Quæro* makes *quæsīvi, quæsītum,* to seek. So *ac-, an-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-quīro.*

Tĕro, trīvi, trītum, to wear, to bruise. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-tĕro.*

Verro, verri, verſum, to ſweep, bruſh, or make clean. So *a-, con-, de-, e-, præ-, re-verro.*

Uro, uſſi, uſtum, to burn. So *ad-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, per-, ſub-uro.*

Gĕro, geſſi, geſtum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, di-, in-, pro-, re-, ſug-gĕro.*

2. *Curro, cŭcurri, curſum,* to run. So *ac-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, pro-curro,* which ſometimes double the firſt ſyllable, and ſometimes not; as, *accurri,* or *accŭcurri,* &c. *Circum-, re-, ſuc-, tranſ-curro,* hardly ever redouble the firſt ſyllable.

3. *Sĕro, sēvi, sătum,* to ſow. The compounds which ſignify *planting* or *ſowing,* have *sēvi, sĭtum;* as, *consĕro, consēvi, consĭtum,* to plant together. So *aſ-, circum-, de-, diſ-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, ſub-, tran-sĕro.*

Sĕro, to knit, had anciently *sĕrui, sertum,* which its compounds ſtill retain; as, *aſsĕro, aſſerui, aſſertum,* to claim. So *con-, circum-, de-, diſ-, ediſ-, ex-, in-, intersĕro.*

4. *Fŭro,* to be mad, wants both preterite and ſupine.

SO has *sīvi, sītum;* as,

Arceſſo, arceſsīvi, arceſsītum, to call *or* ſend for. So *capeſſo,* to take; *faceſſo,* to do, to go away; *laceſſo,* to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Vīſo, vīſi,* —— to go to ſee, to viſit. So *in-, re-viſo, Inceſſo, inceſſi,* —— to attack, to ſeize.

Exc. 2. *Depſo, depſui, depſtum,* to knead. So *con-, perdepſo.*

Pinſo, pinſui, or *pinſi, pinſum, piſtum,* or *pinsĭtum,* to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto* has *flexi, flexum,* to bow. So *circum-, de-, in-, re-, retro-flecto.*

Plecto, plexi, and *plexui, plexum,* to plait. So *implecto.*

Necto, nexi, and *nexui, nexum,* to tie or knit. So *an-, con-, circum-, in-, ſub-necto.*

Pecto, pexi, and *pexui, pexum,* to dreſs or comb. So *de-, ex-, re-pecto.*

2. *Mĕto, messui, messum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-, e-, præ-mĕto.*

3. *Pĕto, pĕtivi, pĕtitum*, to seek, to pursue. So *ap-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, sup-pĕto.*

Mitto, misi, missum, to send. So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, de-, di-, e-, im-, inter-, intro-, o-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, transmitto.*

Verto, verti, versum, to turn. So *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, re-, sub-, transverto.*

Sterto, stertui, —— to snore. So *desterto.*

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stĭti, stătum*; but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stĕti, statum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stĭti*, and *stĭtum*; as, *assisto, astĭti, astĭtum*, to stand by. So *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sisto.* But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo* which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum*, to live. So *ad- con-, per-, pro-, re-, super-vivo.*

Solvo, solvi, solūtum, to loose. So *ab-, dis-, ex-, per-, resolvo.*

Volvo, volvi, volūtum, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-volvo.*

2. *Texo*, the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*, has *texui, textum*, to weave. So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-texo.*

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*; as,

Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnītum, to fortify.

EXC. 1. *Singultio, singultivi, singultum*, to sob.

Sepĕlio, sepĕlivi, sepultum, to bury.

Vĕnio, vēni, ventum, to come. So *ad-, ante-, circum-,*

con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, poſt-, præ-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-vĕnio.

Vĕneo, vēnii, —— to be ſold.

Sălio, sălui, and *sălii, ſaltum,* to leap. The compounds have commonly *sĭlui,* ſometimes *ſilii* or *sĭlivi,* and *ſultum*; as, *transĭlio, transĭlui, transĭlii,* and *transĭlivi, tranſultum,* to leap over. So *ab-, aſ-, circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-sĭlio.*

Exc. 2. *Amĭcio* has *amĭcui, amictum,* ſeldom *amixi,* to cover or clothe.

Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, to tie. So *circum-, de-, e-, revincio.*

Sancio, ſanxi, ſanctum; and *ſancivi, ſancitum,* to eſtabliſh or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio, campſi; campſum,* to change money.

Sēpio, ſepſi, ſeptum, to hedge or incloſe. So *circum-, diſ-, inter-, ob-, præ-sēpio.*

Haurio, hauſi, hauſtum, rarely *hauſum,* to draw out, to empty. So *de-, ex-haurio.*

Sentio, ſenſi, ſenſum, to feel, to perceive. So *aſ-, con-, diſ-, per-, præ-, ſub-ſentio.*

Raucio, rauſi, rauſum, to be hoarſe.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio, ſarſi, ſartum,* to mend or repair. So *ex-, re-ſarcio.*

Farcio, farſi, fartum, to cram. So *con-fercio, eſ-fercio,* or *eſ-farcio*; *in-fercio,* or *in-farcio*; *re-fercio.*

Fulcio, fulſi, fultum, to prop or uphold. So *con-, eſ-, in-, per-, ſuſ-fulcio.*

Exc. 5. The compounds of *părio,* have *pĕrui, pertum*; as, *apĕrio, apĕrui, apertum,* to open. So *opĕrio,* to ſhut, to cover. But *compĕrio* has *compĕri, compertum,* to know a thing for certain. *Rĕperio, repĕri, repertum,* to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the ſupine. *Cæcūtio, cæcutivi,* to be dim-ſighted. *Geſtio, geſtivi,* to ſhew one's joy by the geſture of his body. *Glŏcio, glŏcivi,* to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio, dementivi,* to be mad.

Ineptio, ineptivi, to play the fool. *Prosĭlio, prosĭlui,* to leap forth. *Ferōcio, ferōcivi,* to be fierce.

Ferio, to ſtrike, wants both preterite and ſupine. So *referio,* to ſtrike again.

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a paſſive form, has an active or neuter ſignification; as, *Lŏquor,* I ſpeak; *mŏrior,* I die.

A common verb, under a paſſive form, has either an active or paſſive ſignification; as, *Crĭminor,* I accuſe; *or* I am accuſed.

Moſt deponent verbs of old were the ſame with common verbs. They are called *Deponent,* becauſe they have laid aſide the paſſive ſenſe.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the ſame manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lætor, lætatus, lætāri,* to rejoice; *vereor, verĭtus, verēri,* to fear; *fungor, functus, fungi,* to diſcharge an office; *pŏtior, pŏtitus, pŏtiri,* to enjoy, to be maſter of.

The learner ſhould be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the ſeveral conjugations; thus, *lætor,* of the firſt conjugation, like *amor:*

Indicative Mode.

Preſ. *Lætor,* I rejoice; *lætāris,* vel *-āre,* thou rejoiceſt, *&c.*
Imp. *Lætabar,* I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *lætabāris, &c.*
Perf. *Lætatus ſum* vel *fui,* I have rejoiced, *&c.*
Plu-perf. *Lætatus, eram* vel *fueram,* I had rejoiced, *&c.*
Fut. *Lætabor,* I ſhall or will rejoice; *lætabĕris,* or *-abēre, &c.*
Lætaturus ſum, I am to rejoice, *or* about to rejoice, *&c.*

Subjunctive.

Preſ. *Lætet,* I may rejoice; *lætēris,* or *-ēre, &c.*
Imp. *Lætarer,* I might rejoice; *lætārēris,* or *-rēre, &c.*
Perf. *Lætatus ſim* vel *fuerim,* I may have rejoiced, *&c.*
Plu-perf. *Lætatus eſſem* vel *fuiſſem,* I might have rejoiced, *&c.*
Fut. *Lætatus, fuero,* I ſhall have rejoiced, *&c.*

Imperative.

Preſ. *Lætare,* vel *ātor,* rejoice thou; *lætator,* let him rejoice, *&c.*

Infinitive.

Preſ. *Lætari,* to rejoice.
Perf. *Lætatus eſſe* vel *fuiſſe,* to have rejoiced.

Fut. *Lætaturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.
Læt. turus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

Pres. *Lætans*, rejoicing.
Perf. *Lætatus*, having rejoiced.
Fut. *Lætaturus*, about to rejoice.
Lætandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

Abominor, *to abhor.*	Apricor, *to bask in the sun.*	Aucŭpor, *to hunt after.*
Adūlor, *to flatter.*	Arbitror, *to think.*	Augŭror, & -o, *to forebode*, or *presage by augury.*
Æmŭlor, *to vie with, to envy.*	Aspernor, *to despise.*	Auspĭcor, *to take an omen, to begin.*
Altercor, *to dispute, to make a repartee.*	Auctiōner, *to sell by auction.*	Auxilior, *to assist, &c.*

In the Second Conjugation.

Mercor, *to deserve.*	Pollĭceor, *to promise.*
Tuĕor, *to defend.*	Liceor, *to bid at an auction.*

In the Third Conjugation.

Amplector, complector, *to embrace.*	Revertor, *to return.*

In the Fourth Conjugation.

Blandior, *to sooth.*	Partior, *to divide.*
Mentior, *to lie.*	Sortior, *to draw* or *cast lots.*
Molior, *to attempt something difficult.*	Largior, *to give liberally.*

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation.*

EXCEPTIONS *in the Second Conjugation.*

Reor, rātus, to think.

Miser eor, misertus, or not contracted *miseritus*, to pity.

Fătĕor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of *făteor* have *fessus*; as, *profĭteor, professus*, to profess. So *confĭteor*, to confess, to own *or* acknowledge.

EXCEPTIONS *in the Third Conjugation.*

Lābor, lapsus, to slide. So *al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, transl-ābor.*

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Utor, ūsus, to use. So *ab-, de-ūtor.*

Lŏquor, lŏquūtus, or *locūtus*, to speak. So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lŏquor.*

Sequor-, sequutus, or *secutus*, to follow. So *as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sequor.*

Quĕror, quæstus, to complain. So *con-, inter-, præ-quĕror.*

Nĭtor, nīsus or *nixus*, to endeavour, to lean upon. So *an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nĭtor:* but the compounds have oftener *nixus.*

Păciscor, pactus, to bargain. So *de-peciscor.*

Grădior, gressus, to go. So *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, transgrĕdior.*

Proficiscor, profectus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nactus, to get.

Pătior, passus, to suffer. So *per-petior.*

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So *adĭpiscor, adeptus*, and *indipiscor, indeptus.*

Commĭniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, fruĭtus, or *fructus*, to enjoy. So *per-fruor.*

Oblīviscor, oblītus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Mŏrior, mortuus, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ-mŏrior.*

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.*

Orior, ortus, ŏrīri, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, subŏrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *ĭturus*; thus, *mŏrĭturus, nascĭturus, ŏrĭturus.*

EXCEPTIONS *in the Fourth Conjugation.*

Mētior, mensus, to measure. So *ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mētior.*

Ordior, orsus, to begin. So *ex-, red-ordior.*

Experior, expertus, to try.

Opperior, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

Vescor, vesci, *to feed.*
Līquor, līqui, *to melt or be dissolved.*
Mĕdeor, mederi, *to heal.*
Reminiscor, reminisci, *to remember.*
Præverto, præverti, *to get before, to outrun.*
Diffiteor, diffiteri, *to deny.*
Diverto, diverti, *to turn aside, to take lodging.*

Fut. *Lætaturus esse*, to be about t
Læt. turus fuisse, to have be
Pa

Pres. *Lætans*, rejoicin
Perf. *Lætatus*, havin
Fut. *Lætaturus*, abo
Lætandus, to

In like manner conj

Abomĭnor, *to abhor.* Apr
Adūlor, *to flatter.* *f*
Æmŭlor, *to vie with,* A
to envy. *A*
Altercor, *to dispute, to* *A*
make a repartee.

In t

Mercor, *to traffick.*
Tueor, *to defend.*

I

Amplect-r, compl

Blandior, *to flatter.*
Mentior, *to lie.*
Molior, *to attem*

There a

EX

Reor, *rā*
Mise reo
Fătĕor,
have *fe*
teor, to

Lăb
ter, *p*
Ul
U
I
cum
ăn

Quĕror, quæstus, 3 [illegible]
ror.
Nītor, nīsus or *nixus.* 3 [illegible]
ad-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re- [illegible]
have ordinary *nixus.*
Pācīscor, pactus. 3 [illegible]
Grādior, gressus. 3 [illegible]
di-, e-, in-, intro-, pro- [illegible]
trans-gredior.
Prĭscīscor, prīsctus. 3 [illegible]
Nanciscor, nactus, 3 [illegible]
Pātior, passus. 3 [illegible]
Apiscor, aptus, 3 [illegible] ited after the same
piscor, inceptus.
Commĭnīscor, [illegible] -, *per-, co-, in-, præ-,*
Fruor, [illegible] (of *venum,* a sale, and
Colĕscor, [illegible] und, is a regular verb
Experīscor, [illegible] perfect, the compounds
Mĭsĕrior, [illegible] *adĭisti* or *adĭsti, adĭĕrat,*
pro-mĭsĕrior.
Nascor, natus, 3 [illegible] n rendered in English under
inter-, re-, sub-nascor.
Orior, ortus, [illegible] *ivit,* he is gone; *ivĕrat,* he
[illegible] shall be gone. So *vēnit,* he is
ŏrior. [illegible], he was come, &c. In the pas-
The three last [illegible] part are only used impersonal-
thus, [illegible] *quantum est ab illis,* they are come.
EXCEPT [illegible] of *eo,* however, used personally;
[illegible] gone, Cic. *Libri Sibyllini aditi sunt,*
Mĭsĕrĕor, [illegible] *pedibus transiri potest,* Cæs. *Inimicitiæ*
[illegible]
EO, I cannot, are conjugated the same
[illegible] tive and the gerunds; and

[illegible] *to be willing.*

[illegible], vultis, volunt.
[illegible], -ebatis, -ebant.
[illegible] -uistis, -uerunt, -uere
[illegible]us, -ueratis, -uerant.
[illegible] -etis, -ent.

Supines.
1. itum.
2. itu.

[illegible] s, eant.
[illegible] s, irent.
[illegible] ritis, iverint.
[illegible] ritis, ivissent.
[illegible] ritis, iverint.
[illegible] nitive.
[illegible] c.
[illegible] iturus, a, um.
[illegible] iturus.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Velim,	velis,	velit;	velimus,	velitis,	velint.
Im. Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellemus,	velletis,	vellent.
Per. Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu. Vol-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet;	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut. Vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive. *Participle.*

Pref. Velle. *Perf.* Voluiſſe. *Pref.* Volens.

The reſt not uſed.

Nōlo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Nōlo	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolumus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
Im. Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-batis,	-ebant.
Per. Nol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt. -uere.
Plu. Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut. Nolam,	noles,	nolet;	nolemus,	noletis,	nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint.
Im. Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.
Per. Nol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu. Nol-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet;	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut. Nol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative. *Infinitive.* *Participles.*

Pr. { Noli, / Nolīto; } { nolite, / nolitote. } *Pr.* Nolle. *Per.* Noluiſſe. *Pr.* Nolens, *The reſt wanting.*

Mālo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

Indicative mode.

Pr. Mal-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
Im. Mal-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-bant.
Per. Mal-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt. -uere.
Plu. Mal-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut. Mal-am,	-es,	-et: *&c.*	*This is ſcarcely in uſe.*		

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Malim,	malis,	malit;	malimus,	malitis,	malint.
Im. Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallemus,	malletis,	mallent.
Per. Mal-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu. Mal-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet;	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut. Mal-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pref. Malle. *Perf.* Maluiſſe. *The reſt not uſed.*

Fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, *To bring* or *suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fĕro,	fers,	fert;	ferĭmus,	fertis,	ferunt.	
Im. Fer-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
Per. Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit;	tulĭmus,	tulistis,	tulerunt,	-ere.
Plu. Tul-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.	
Fut. Feram,	feres,	feret;	feremus,	feretis,	ferent.	

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Feram,	feras,	ferat;	feramus,	feratis,	ferant.
Im. Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferremus,	ferretis,	ferrent.
Per. Tul-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu. Tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
Fut. Tul-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative.

Pr. {Fer, Ferto: {ferte, fertote, ferunto.

Infinitive.

Pr. Ferre.
Per. Tulisse.
Fut. Esse laturus, a um.
Fuisse laturus, a, um.

Participles.	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pres. Ferens.	Ferendum.	1. Latum.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.	Ferendi.	2. Latu.
	Ferendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Feror, latus, ferri, *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Feror, ferris, *vel* ferre, fertur; ferĭmur, ferimini, feruntur,
Im. Fer-ebar, -ebaris, *v.*-ebare, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Per. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.
Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.
Fut. Ferar, ferēris, *vel* ferēre, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Ferar, feraris, *vel* ferare, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
Im. Ferrer, ferreris, *v.* ferrere, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.
Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.
Fut. Latus fuero, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pref. Ferre *vel* fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

Infinitive. *Participles.*

Pref. Ferri. *Perf.* Latus, -a, -um.
Perf. Esse *vel* fuisse latus, -a, -um. *Fut.* Ferendus, -a, -um.
Fut. Latum iri.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fĕro*; as, *affĕro, attŭli, allatum*; *auffĕro, abstŭli, ablatum*; *diffĕro, distŭli, dilatum*; *conffĕro, contŭli, collatum*; *inffĕro, intŭli, illatum*; *offĕro, obtŭli, oblatum*; *effĕro, extŭli, elatum*. So *circum-, per-, transf-, de-, pro-, ante-, præfĕro*. In some writers we find *adfero, adtŭli, adlatum*; *conlatum, inlatum, obfero*, &c. for *affero*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo*, for *magis volo*; *fero, fers, fert*, &c. for *feris, ferit*, &c. *Feror, ferris*, v. *ferre, fertur*; for *ferĕris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco*, and *făcio* are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, duce, face*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

Fio, factus, fĭĕri, *To be made* or *done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Fio,	fis,	fit;	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Im.	Fiebam,	fiebas,	fiebat;	fiebamus,	fiebatis,	fiebant.
Per.	Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.					
Plu.	Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.					
Fut.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiemus,	fietis,	fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiamus,	fiatis,	fiant.
Im.	Fĭĕrem,	fieres,	fieret;	fieremus,	fieretis,	fierent.
Per.	Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.					
Plu.	Factus essem, &c. factus fuissem, &c.					
Fut.	Factus fuero, &c.					

Imperative.

Pr. Fi, Fito: fite, fitote, fiunto.

Infinitive.

Pr. Fieri.
Per. Esse *vel* fuisse factus, a, um.
Fut. Factum iri.

Participles.

Per. Factus, -a, -um.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

Supine.

Factu.

The compounds of *făcio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *calefacio*, to warm; *calefio, calefac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regular-

ly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio, confice; conficior, confectus, confici.* We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confieri; defit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER-PASSIVE *Verbs*, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sŏlco, solĭtus, solĕre*, to use; *audeo, ausus, audēre*, to dare; *gaudeo, gavīsus, gaudēre*, to rejoice; *fīdo, fīsus, fidĕre*, to trust: So *confīdo*, to trust; and *diffīdo*, to distrust; which also have *confīdi*, & *diffīdi*. Some add *mœreo, mœstus, mœrere*, to be sad; but *mœstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *juratus sum* and *cænatus sum*, for *juravi* and *cænavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *bapŭlo, -avi, -atum*, to be beaten *or* whipped; *veneo*, to be sold; *exŭlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *odi*, *cœpi*, and *memĭni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification: thus,

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.* Participles *osus, osurus: exosus, perosus.*

Cœpi, I begin *or* have begun, *cœperam, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse.* Supine *cœptu.* Participles *cœptus, cœpturus.*

Memini, I remember, *or* have remembered, *memineram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse:* Imperative, *memento, mementote.*

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say *osus sum*; and always *exosus, perosus sum*, and not *exodi, perodi.* We say, *opus cœpit fieri*, or *cœptum est.*

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently hath the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

Furo, to be mad, *dor* to be given, and *for*, to speak; as also *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular: thus, we say, *daris, datur*; but never *dor.*

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say, *inquam*, I say, *forem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I

dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, *or* I will do it; *ave*, and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, *or* give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind. Pr.	Aio,	ais,	ait:	——	——	aiunt.
Im.	Aiebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	——	aisti.	——	——	——	——
Sub. Per.	——	aias,	aiat:	——	aiatis,	aiant.

Imperat. Ai. *Particip. Pref.* Aiens.

Ind. Pr.	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit:	-quĭmus,	-quĭtis,	-quiunt.
Im.	——	——	inquiebat:	——	——	inquiebant.
Per.	——	inquisti,	——	——	——	——
Fut.	——	inquies,	inquiet:	——	——	——

Imperat. Inque, inquĭto. *Particip.* Pr. Inquiens.

Sub. Im. Plu.	Fŏrem,	fores,	foret:	foremus,	foretis,	forent.

Inf. Fore, *to be hereafter* or *to be about to be*, the same with *esse futurus*.

Sub. Pr.	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit:	——	——	——
Per.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit:	——	——	faxint.
Fut.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit:	——	faxĭtis,	faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Imper. Ave *vel* avĕto; *plur.* avĕte *vel* avetote. *Inf.* averc.
——Salve *v.* salveto; — salvete *v.* salvetote. —— salvere.
Indic. Fut. —— Salvebis.
Imperat. second perf. sing. Cedo, *plur.* cedite.
Indic. Pref. first perf. sing. Quæso, *plur.* quæsŭmus.

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *infit*, he begins; *defit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis*, for *si vis*; *sultis*, for *si vultis*; *sodes*, for *si audes*; *capsis*, for *capse si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *delectat*, it delights; *decet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evenit*, it happens:

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind. Pr.	Delectat,	Dĕcet,	Contingit,	Evĕnit,
Im.	Delectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Evenicbat,
Per.	Delectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evĕnit,

		1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
	Plu.	Delectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evenerat,
	Fut.	Delectabit.	Decebit.	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub.	Pr.	Delectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
	Im.	Delectaret,	Decĕret,	Contingĕret,	Eveniret,
	Per.	Delectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evenerit,
	Plu.	Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
	Fut.	Delectaverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
Inf.	Pr.	Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingĕre,	Evenīre,
	Per.	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *favētur*, *curritur*, *venītur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind.	Pr.	Pugnātur,	Favētur,	Curritur,	Venītur,
	Im.	Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur,	Veniebatur,
	Per.	Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
	Plu.	Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat.
	Fut.	Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub.	Pr.	Pugnetur,	Faveatur,	Curratur,	Veniatur,
	Im.	Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curreretur,	Veniretur,
	Per.	Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
	Plu.	Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
	Fut.	Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.
Inf.	Pr.	Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Veniri,
		Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
		Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pœnitens*, *-dum*, *-dus*, &c. *Inducī ad pudendum et pigendum*, Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dĕcet*, it becomes; *pœnĭtet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *miĕret*, it pities; *pĭget*, it irketh; *pŭdet*, it shameth; *lĭcet*, it is lawful; *lĭbet* or *lŭbet*, it pleaseth; *tædet*, it wearieth; *ĭtquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miserult*, or *misertum est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigitum est*; *putet*, *puduit*, or *puditum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tædet*, *tæduit*, *tæsum est*, oftener *pertæsum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Juvat, spectat, văcat, stat, constat, præstat, restat,* &c.
In the second, *Apparet, attinet, pertinet, dēbet, dŏlet, nŏcet, lătet, liquet, pătet, plăcet, displĭcet, sĕdet, vŏlet,* &c.
In the third, *Accĭdit, incĭpit, desĭnit, suffĭcit,* &c.
In the fourth, *Convĕnit, expĕdit,* &c.
Also irregular verbs, *Est, obest, prodest, potest, interest, supersum; fit, prætĕrit, nequit, subit, confert, refert,* &c.

Obs. 3. Under Impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgŭrat, fulmĭnat, tŏnat, grandinat, gĕlat, pluit, ningit, lucescit, advesperascit,* &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi,* it pleases me, thee, him; *or* I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo,* I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur, venītur a me, a te,* &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me,* Thou art favoured by me, *or* I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus we can say, *ego placeo tibi,* I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire,* if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire.* So we can say, *multa homini contingunt,* many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contĭgi esse domi,* we must either say, *me contigit esse domi,* or *mihi contigit esse domi,* I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs,* which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior,* to agree; *fabrĭco* and *fabrĭcor,* to frame; *mereo* and *mereor,* to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo, lavas, lavāre:* and *lavo, lavis, lavĕre,* to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,
Ferveo, ferves, *and* fervo, fervis, *to boil.*
Fulgeo, fulges, *and* fulgo, fulgis, *to shine.*
Strideo, strides, *and* strido, stridis, *to make a noise.*
Tueor, tuēris, *and* tuor, tuĕris, *to defend.*
To these add *tergeo, terges;* and *tergo, tergis,* to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, fodis, foděre, *and* fodio, fodis, fodīre, *to dig.*
Sallo, ſallis, ſalle're, *and* ſallio, ſallis, ſallīre, *to ſalt.*
Arceſſo, -is, arceſſere, *and* arceſſio, arceſsīre, *to ſend for.*
Morior, moreris, mori, *and* morior, moriris, moriri, *to die.*
So Orior, oreris, *and* orior, oriris, oriri, *to riſe.*
Potior, poteris, *and* potior, potiris, potiri, *to enjoy.*

There is likewiſe a verb, which is uſually of the ſecond conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cieo, cies, ciēre;* and *cio, cis, cīre,* to rouſe; whence *accīre* and *accītus.*

To theſe we may add the verb *EDO,* to eat, which, though regularly formed, alſo agrees in ſeveral of its parts with *ſum;* thus,

Ind. Pref. *Edo, edis* or *es, edit* or *eſt;*——*editis* or *eſtis*——
Imp. *Ede* or *es, edito* or *eſto: edite* or *eſte: editote* or *eſtote.*
Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *eſſem, ederes* or *eſſes,* &c.
Inf. Pref. *Edere* or *eſſe.*
Paſſive Ind. Pref. *Editur* or *eſtur.*

It may not be improper here to ſubjoin a liſt of thoſe verbs which reſemble one another in ſome of their parts, though they differ in ſignification. Of theſe ſome agree in the preſent, ſome in the preterite, and others in the ſupine.

1. The following agree in the preſent, but are differently conjugated:

Aggĕro, -as, *to heap up.*	Aggĕro, -is, *to bring together.*
Appello, -as, *to call.*	Appello, -is, *to arrive.*
Compello, -as, *to addreſs.*	Compello, -is, *to drive together.*
Colligo, -as, *to bind.*	Colligo, -is, *to gather together.*
Conſterno, -as, *to aſtoniſh.*	Conſterno, -is, *to ſtrew.*
Effero, -as, *to enrage.*	Effero, -fers, *to bring out.*
Fundo, -as, *to found.*	Fundo, -is, *to pour out.*
Mando, -as, *to command.*	Mando, -is, *to chew.*
Obsĕro, -as, *to lock.*	Obsĕro, -is, *to beſet.*
Vŏlo, -as, *to fly.*	Vŏlo, vis, *to will.*

Of this claſs ſome have a dierffent quantity; as,

Cōlo, -as, *to ſtrain.*	Cŏlo, -is, *to till.*
Dĭco, -as, *to dedicate.*	Dīco, -is, *to ſay.*
Edŭco, -as, *to train up.*	Edūco, -is, *to lead forth.*
Lēgo, -as, *to ſend.*	Lĕgo, -is, *to read.*
Vădo, -as, *to wade.*	Vādo, -is, *to go.*

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite:

Aceo, acui, *to be ſour.*	Acuo, acui, *to ſharpen.*
Creſco, crēvi, *to grow.*	Cerno, crēvi, *to ſee.*
Frīgeo, frixi, *to be cold.*	Frīgo, frixi, *to fry.*
Fulgeo, fulſi, *to ſhine.*	Fulcio, fulſi, *to prop.*
Lūceo, luxi, *to ſhine.*	Lūgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*

Păveo, pāvi, *to be afraid.*
Pendeo, pĕpendi, *to hang.*
Paſco, pāvi, *to feed.*
Pendo, pĕpendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the ſupine:

Creſco, crētum, *to grow.*
Măneo, manſum, *to ſtay.*
Sto, ſtatum, *to ſtand.*
Succenſeo, -cenſum, *to be angry.*
Tĕneo, tentum, *to hold.*
Verro, verſum, *to ſweep.*
Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*
Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*
Mando, manſum, *to chew.*
Siſto, ſtatum, *to ſtop.*
Succendo, -cenſum, *to kindle.*
Tendo, tentum, *to ſtretch out.*
Verto, verſum, *to turn.*
Vivo, victum, *to live.*

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenſes.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e*; as, *audĭbam, ſcĭbam*; for *audiēbam, ſciēbam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they uſed *IBO* in the active, and *ibor* in the paſſive voice; as, *dormībo, dormībor*, for *dormiam, dormiar*.

3. The preſent of the ſubjunctive anciently ended in *IM*; as, *edim*, for *edam*; *duim* for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the ſubjunctive active ſometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levaſſim, levaſſo*, for *levaverim, levavero*; *capſim, capſo*, for *ceperim, cepero*: Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levaſſere*, for *levaturus eſſe*.

5. In the ſecond perſon of the preſent of the imperative paſſive, we find *MINO* in the ſingular, and *mĭnor* in the plural; as, *famĭno*, for *fare*; and *progrĕdimĭnor*, for *progrĕdimini*.

6. The ſyllable *ER* was frequently added to the preſent of the infinitive paſſive; as, *farier*, for *fari*; *dicier*, for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect paſſive, when joined with the verb *eſſe*, were ſometimes uſed as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos dicturum eſſe*, for *dicturos*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me miſſum facias*, for *miſſas*, Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Cano*, to ſup; *laudo*, to praiſe; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw ſtones; *operor*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cena, laus, fraus*, &c. But when they expreſs imitation or reſemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patriſſo, græcor, bubulo, cornĭcor*, &c. I imitate or reſemble my father, a Græcian, a crow, &c. from *pater, Græcus, cornix*.

Of thoſe derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deſerve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Deſideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* expreſs frequency of action, and are all of the firſt conjugation. They are formed from the laſt ſupine, by changing *ātu* into *ĭto*, in verbs of the firſt conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamĭto*, to cry frequently: *terreo*, *terrĭto*; *verto*, *verſo*; *dormio*, *dormĭto*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minĭtor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noſcĭto* from *noſco*; *ſcitor*, or rather *ſciſcĭtor*, from *ſcio*; *pavĭto*, from *paveo*; *factor*, from *ſequor*; *loquĭtor*, from *loquor*. So *quærĭto*, *fundĭto*, *agĭto*, *fluĭto*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are alſo formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curſo*, *curſito*; *pello*, *pulſo*, *pulsĭto*, or by contraction *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *captĭto*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantĭto*; *defendo*, *defenſo*, *defenſito*; *dico*, *dictĭto*, *dictito*; *gero*, *geſto*, *geſtito*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactĭto*; *venio*, *ventito*; *mutto*, *muſſo*, (for *mutito*) *muſsĭto*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always expreſs frequency of action. Many of them have much the ſame ſenſe with their primitives, or expreſs the meaning more ſtrongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increaſe of any thing. They are formed from the ſecond perſon ſing. of the preſent of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labaſco*, from *labo*; *tremiſco*, from *tremo*; *obdormiſco*, from *obdormio*. *Hiſco*, from *bio*, is contracted for *biaſco*. Inceptives are likewiſe formed from ſubſtantives and adjectives; as, *pueraſco*, from *puer*; *dulceſco*, from *dulcis*; *juveneſco*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and ſupine; unleſs very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* ſignify a deſire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter ſupine, by adding *rio*, and ſhortening the *u*; as, *cænaturio*, I deſire to ſup, from *cænatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation, and want both preterite and ſupine, except theſe three, *eſŭrio*, to deſire to eat; *partŭrio*, to be in travail; *nuptŭrio*, to deſire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *cantillo*, *ſorbillo*, *-are*, I ſing, I ſup a little. To theſe ſome add *albĕo* and *candĕo*, *-ere*, to be or to grow whitiſh; alſo *nigrico*, *fodico*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intenſive*; as, *Capeſſo*, *faceſſo*, *peteſſo* or *petiſſo*, I take, I do, I ſeek earneſtly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fŭto, fendo, specio, gruo,* &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *pro-deo*, for *pro-eo:* or taken away; as, *asporto, omitto, trado, pejĕro, pergo, debeo, præbeo,* &c. for *absporto, obmitto, transdo, perjuro, perrego, debibeo, præbibeo,* &c. So *demo, promo, sumo,* of *de, pro, sub,* and *emo* which anciently signified *to take* or *to take away.* Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed; as *damno, condemno; calco, conculco; lædo, collīdo; audio, obĕdio,* &c. *Affĕro, aufero, collaudo, implico,* &c. for *adfero, abfero, conlaudo, inplico,* &c.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having *in Latin* gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come: only participles in *dus* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans,* loving; *amatūrus,* about to love: and the perfect and future passive; as, *amatus,* loved; *amandus,* to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset,* &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens, sessurus; stans, staturus.*

From some Neuter verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus, festinatus, juratus, laboratus, vigilatus, cessatus, sudatus, triumphatus, regnatus, desursus, desitus, emeritus, emersus, obitus, placitus, successus, occāsus,* &c. and also of the future in *dus;* as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, erubescendus,* &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido,* only *fidens* and *fisus; foleo, solens* and *solitus; vapŭlo, vapulans* and *va-*

pulaturus; *Gaudeo, gaudens, gavisus*, and *gavisurus*; *Audeo, audens, ausus, ausurus, audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.* Virg.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Loquens, speaking; *locutūrus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken: *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, *or* having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many Participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus, conatus, confessus, adortus, amplexus, blanditus, largītus, mentītus, oblītus, testatus, veneratus*, &c.

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as *Insciens, inspĕrans, indicens*, for *non dicens, inopinans* and *necopinans, immĕrens; Illaesus, impransus, inconsultus, incusoditus, immetatus, impunītus, imparatus, incomitatus, incomptus, indemnatus, indotatus, incorruptus, interritus*, and *imperterritus, intestatus, inausus, inopinatus, inultus, incensus*, for *non census*, not registered; *infectus*, for *non factus, invisus*, for *non visus, indictus* for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo; infectus* from *inficio; invisus* from *invideo; indictus* from *indīco*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amans, loving; *amantior, amantissimus; doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctissimus*; or a substantive; as, *Praefectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although resembling participles are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alatus, barbatus, cordatus, caudatus, cristatus, aurītus, pellītus, turrītus; astutus, cornutus, nasutus*, &c, winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus, eratus, argentatus, ferratus, plumbatus, gypsatus, calceatus, clypeatus, galeatus, tunicatus, larvatus, palliatus, lymphatus, purpuratus, praetextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinītus*, having long hair, *perītus*, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much reſemble Participles in their ſignification, but generally expreſs the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the ſame with *valde vitans*, avoiding much; *Sall. Jug.* 60. and 101.; *Liv.* xxv. 13. So *errabundus, ludibundus, populabundus, moribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are Participial words, which bear the ſignification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the ſecond declenſion, through all the caſes of the ſingular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and Engliſh, ſubſtantives derived from the verb, which ſo much reſemble the Gerund in their ſignification, that frequently they may be ſubſtituted in its place. They are generally uſed, however, in a more undetermined ſenſe than the Gerund, and in Engliſh have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the ſubſtantive *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of *Cicero*.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and ſome others, often take *u* inſtead of *e*; as, *faciundum, di, do, dus; experiundum, potiundum, gerundum, petundum, dicundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the ſame ſignification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any perſon or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declenſion, having only the accuſative and ablative caſes.

The former Supine is commonly uſed in an active, and the latter in a paſſive ſenſe, but ſometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, v. *verberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

ADVERB.

An Adverb is an indeclinable part of ſpeech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to expreſs ſome circumſtance, quality, or manner of their ſignification.

All Adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, Manner, &c.*

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time,* and *Order.*

1. Adverbs of *Place* are fivefold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Motion or rest in a place.*

Ubi?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic, Isthic, Ibi,	*There.*
Intus,	*Within.*
Foris,	*Without.*
Ubique,	*Every where.*
Nusquam,	*No where.*
Alicubi,	*Some where.*
Alibi,	*Else where.*
Ubivis,	*Any where.*
Ibidem,	*In the same place.*

2. *Motion to a place.*

Quo?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc, Isthuc,	*Thither.*
Intro,	*In.*
Foras,	*Out.*
Eo,	*To that place.*
Alio,	*To another place.*
Aliquo,	*To some place.*
Eodem,	*To the same place.*

3. *Motion toward a place.*

Quorsum?	*Whither-ward?*
Versus,	*Toward.*
Horsum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorsum,	*Thitherward.*
Surfum,	*Upward.*
Deorsum,	*Downward.*
Antrorsum,	*Forward.*
Retrorsum,	*Backward.*
Dextrorsum,	*Towards the right.*
Sinistrorsum,	*Towards the left.*

4. *Motion from a place.*

Unde?	*Whence?*
Hinc,	*Hence.*
Illinc, Isthinc, Inde,	*Thence.*
Alibunde,	*From else where.*
Alicunde,	*From some place.*
Sicunde,	*If from any place.*
Utrinque,	*On both sides.*
Superne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cœlitus,	*From heaven.*
Funditus,	*From the ground.*

5. *Motion through a place.*

Qua?	*Which way?*
Hac,	*This way.*
Illac, Isthac,	*That way.*
Alia,	*Another way.*

2. Adverbs of *Time* are threefold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc,	*Now.*
Heri,	*Yesterday.*
Hodie,	*To day.*
Tunc, Tum,	*Then.*
Olim,	*Sometime.*

Dudum, Pridem,	*Heretofore.*
Pridie,	*The day before.*
Nudius tertius,	*Three days ago.*
Nuper,	*Lately.*
Jamjam, Mox,	*Presently.*
Statim,	*By and by.*
Protinus,	*Instantly.*
Illico,	*Straightway.*
Cras,	*To-morrow.*
Postridie,	*The day after.*
Perendie,	*Two days hence.*
Nondum,	*Not yet.*
Quando?	*When?*
Aliquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum,	*Sometimes.*
Semper,	*Ever.*
Nunquam,	*Never.*
Interim,	*In the mean time.*
Quotidie,	*Daily.*

Diu,	*Long.*
Quamdiu?	*How long?*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu, Jamdūdum, Jampridem,	*Long ago.*

3. *Vicissitude or repetition of time.*

Quoties?	*How often?*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Raro,	*Seldom.*
Toties,	*So often.*
Aliquoties,	*For several times.*
Vicissim, Alternātim,	*By turns.*
Rursus, Iterum,	*Again.*
Subinde, Identidem,	*Ever and anon, now and then.*
Semel,	*Once.*
Bis,	*Twice.*
Ter,	*Thrice.*
Quater,	*Four times, &c.*

3. Adverbs of *Order.*

Inde,	*Then.*
Deinde,	*After that.*
Dehinc,	*Henceforth.*
Porro,	*Moreover.*
Deinceps,	*So forth.*
Denuo,	*Of new.*
Denique,	*Finally.*
Postrēmo,	*Lastly.*
Primo, -ùm,	*First.*
Secundo, -ùm,	*Secondly.*
Tertio, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
Quarto, -ùm,	*Fourthly, &c.*

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative.*

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as *bene*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely: and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *profectò, certè, sanè, planè, ne, utique, ita, etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as *forte, forsan, fortassis, fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non, haud*, no; *nequāquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minimè*, nothing less.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edĕpol*, *mecastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpŏte*, *videlĭcet*, *scilĭcet*, *nimīrum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *seorsum*, apart; *separātim*, separately; *sigillatim*, one by one; *virĭtim*, man by man; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *simul*, *unà*, *pariter*, together; *generaliter*, generally; *universaliter*, universally; *plerumque*, for the most part.

10. INDICATION *or* POINTING out; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quomodo*, *qui*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quà*, *quando*, *quamdiu*, *quoties*.

Those which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *Valde*, *maximè*, *magnopĕre*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *admŏdum*, *oppĭdo*, *perquam*, *longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nimium*, too much; *prorsus*, *penĭtus*, *omnĭno*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melĭus*, better; *pejus*, worse; *fortĭus*, more bravely: and *optimè*, best; *pessimè*, worst; *fortissimè*, most bravely; *and innumerable others of the* comparative *and* superlative *degree*.

2. DEFECT; as, *Ferme*, *ferè*, *propemŏdum*, *penè*, almost; *parum*, little; *paulo*, *paulŭlum*, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *potĭus*, *satĭus*, rather; *potissimùm*, *præcipuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imo*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS *or* EQUALITY; as, *ita*, *sic*, *adeò*, so; *ut*, *uti*, *sicut*, *sicŭti*, *velut*, *velŭti*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, as, as if; *quemadmŏdum*, even as; *satis*, enough; *itĭdem*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. UNLIKENESS *or* INEQUALITY; as, *alĭter*, *secus*, otherwise; *alĭoqui* *or* *alioquin*, else; *nedum*, much more *or* much less.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim, paulatim, pedetentim*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, scarcely; *ægrè*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantùm, solùm, modo, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, and CONSTRUCTION of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in TIM or TUS; as, *partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds, generally; *speciatim, vicatim, gregatim; radicitus*, from the root, &c. 2. From Adjectives; and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in E; as, *liberè*, freely; *plenè*, fully: Some in O, UM, and TER; as, *falsò, tantum, graviter*: A few in A, ITUS, and IM; as, *rectà, antiquitùs, privatim*. Some are used two or three ways; as, *primum*, v. -ò, *pugnè, -iter; certè, -ò; caute, -tim: humanè, -iter, -itus; publicè, publicitùs*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *turpiter, felicitèr, acriter, ferociter; facilè, repentè*: one in O, *anxiè*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter; perfidum ridens*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco, optatò advenis*, sc. *tempore; hàc*, sc. *viâ*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille, iste, hic, is, idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as from *ille, illic, illuc, illorsum, illinc*, and *illac*. So from *quis, ubi, quo, quorsum, unde*, and *quà*. Also of time; thus, *quando, quamdiu*, and *quoties*.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cæsim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cædo, pungo, stringo*; *amanter, properanter, dubitanter; distinctè, emendatè; meritò, inopinatò*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *re* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus, intrò*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *fubtus*, from *fub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *tùs*; as, *durè, facilè, acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *duriùs, facilius, acriùs*: The *superlative*, in *issimè*; as, *durissimè, facillimè, acerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; as, *benè, melius, optimè; malè,*

pejus, pessimè; parùm, minùs, minimè, & non; multùm, plus, plurimùm; prope, propiùs, proximè; ocyùs, ocyssime; prius, primò, olim; nuper, nuperrimè; novè, & noviter, noviſſimè; meritò, meritiſſimò; &c. Thoſe adverbs alſo are compared whoſe primitives are obſolete; as, *ſæpè, ſæpiùs, ſæpiſſimè; penitùs, penitiùs, penitiſſimè; ſatis, ſatiùs; ſecus, ſeciùs,* &c. *Magis, maximè;* and *potiùs, potiſſimum,* want the poſitive.

Adverbs are variouſly compounded of all the different parts of ſpeech; thus, *poſtridie, magnopere, maximopere, ſummopere, tantopere, multimodis, omnimodis, quomodo, quare;* of *poſtero die; magno opere,* &c. *Licet, ſcilicet, videlicet,* of *ire, ſcire, videre licet; illico,* of *in loco; ubiſum,* of *quo verſum; comminus,* hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *manus; eminus,* at a diſtance, of *e,* and *manus; quorſum,* of *quo verſum; denuo,* anew, of *de novo; quin,* why not, but, of *qui ne; cur,* of *cui rei; pedetentim,* ſtep by ſtep, as it were *pedem tendendo; perendie,* for *perempto die; nimirum,* of *ne,* i. e. *non mirum; antea, poſtea, præterea,* &c. of *ante* and *ea,* &c. *Ubivis, quovis, undelibet, quouſque, ſicut, ſicuti, velut, veluti, deſuper, inſuper, quamobrem,* &c. of *ubi,* and *vis,* &c. *nudiuſtertius,* of *nunc dies tertius; identidem,* of *idem et idem; impræſentiarum,* i. e. *in tempore rerum præſentium,* &c.

Obſ. 1. The Adverb is not an eſſential part of ſpeech. It only ſerves to expreſs ſhortly, in one word, what muſt otherwiſe have required two or more; as, *ſapienter,* wiſely, for *cum ſapientia; hic,* for *in hoc loco; ſemper,* for *in omni tempore; ſemel,* for *una vice; bis,* for *duabus vicibus; Mehercule,* for *Hercules me juvet,* &c.

Obſ. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently uſed the one for the other: as, *ubi,* where *or* when; *inde,* from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactènus,* hitherto, thus far, with reſpect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obſ. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *paſt, preſent,* or *future*; as, *jam,* already, now, by and by; *olim,* long ago, ſome time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *eſſe peregrè,* to be abroad; *ire peregrè,* to go abroad; *redire peregrè,* to return from abroad.

Obſ. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque,* anſwer to the Engliſh adjection *ſo ever*; as, *ubiubi,* or *ubicunque,* whereſoever; *quoquo, quocunque,* whitherſoever, &c. The ſame holds alſo in other interrogative words; as, *quotquot,* or *quotcunque,* how many ſoever; *quantuscunque, quantuscunque,* or *quantuscunque,* how great ſoever; *utut* or *utcunque,* however *or* howſoever, &c.

PREPOSITION.

A Prepoſition is an indeclinable word which ſhews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	*To.*	Infra,	*Beneath.*
Apud,	*At.*	Juxta,	*Nigh to.*
Ante,	*Before.*	Ob,	*For.*
Adversus, Adversum,	*Against, towards.*	Propter,	*For, hard by.*
Contra,	*Against.*	Per,	*By, through.*
Cis, Citra,	*On this side.*	Præter,	*Besides, except.*
Circa, Circum,	*About.*	Penes,	*In the power of.*
Erga,	*Towards.*	Post,	*After.*
Extra,	*Without.*	Pone,	*Behind.*
Inter,	*Between, among.*	Secus,	*By, along.*
Intra,	*Within.*	Secundum,	*According to.*
		Supra,	*Above.*
		Trans,	*On the farther side.*
		Ultra,	*Beyond.*

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,

A, Ab, Abs,	*From*, or *by.*	De,	*Of, concerning.*
		E, Ex,	*Of, out of.*
Absque,	*Without.*	Pro,	*For.*
Cum,	*With.*	Præ,	*Before.*
Clam,	*Without the knowledge of.*	Palam,	*With the knowledge of.*
		Sine,	*Without.*
Coram,	*Before, in the presence of.*	Tenus,	*Up to, as far as.*

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative:

In, *In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Super, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally *placed before* the word with which they are joined. Seme, however, are put after; as, *cum*, when joined with *me, te, se*, and sometimes with *quo, qui*, and *quibus*: thus, *mecum, tecum*, &c. *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *sque*; and *ward*, in English; as, *toward, eastward*, &c.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to*, &c.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem*

quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octob.* i. e. *ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *prælam, protinus, insuper*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification: as, *adeo*, to go to: *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. In joined with adjectives generally denotes privation; as, *infidus*, unfaithful: but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, *indūro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses; as, *invocātus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrēnātus, immutātus, insuetus, impensus, inhumatus, intentatus*, &c. 2. Per commonly increases the signification; as, *Percārus, percūlor, percūmis, percurīosus, perdifficilis, perelegans, pergrātus, pergrāvis, perhospitālis, perillustris, perquām*, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. Præ sometimes increases; as, *Præclārus, prædīves, prædulcis, prædūrus, præpinguis, prævalidus, prævaleo, præpollco*: and also Ex; as, *Exclāmo, exaggĕro, exangeo, excalefacio, extenuo, exhilāro*; but ex sometimes denotes privation; as, *Exsanguis*, bloodless, pale; *excors, exanimis, -mo*, &c. 4. Sub often diminishes; as, *Subalbidus, subalfurdus, subamārus, subdulcis, subgrandis, subgrāvis, subniger*, &c. a little white or whitish, &c. De often signifies downward; as, *Decīdo, decurro, degrāvo, despicio, delābet*: sometimes increases; as, *Deămo, deūror*; and sometimes expresses privation; as, *Dementis decŏlor, deformis*, &c.

Obs. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am, di* or *dis, re, se, con*, which are commonly called Inseparable Prepositions, because they are only to be found in compound words: however, they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	*round about.*	as,	Ambio,	*to surround.*
Di, Dis,	*asunder.*		Divello,	*to pull asunder.*
			Distrăho,	*to draw asunder.*
Re,	*again.*		Relĕgo,	*to read again.*
Se,	*aside or apart.*		Sepōno,	*to lay aside.*
Con,	*together.*		Concresco,	*to grow together.*

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh! Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, io!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah, hei, heu, eheu!* ah, alas, woes me!
3. WONDER; as, *papæ!* O strange; *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apage!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh, proh!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat!* ha, aha!
8. IMPRECATION; as, *væ!* wo, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha, ha, he!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au, st, pax!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *ebo, ebodum, io, ho!* so, ho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *vah!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some Interjections denote several different passions: thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Miserum,* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, *You* and *I*, and *the boy*, *read Virgil*, is one sentence, made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; the boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "You *and* I read Virgil, *but* the boy reads Ovid," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, at, atque, que*, and; *etiam, quoque, item*, also; *cum, tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve*, neither, nor.
2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive*, either, or.
3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis*, though, although, albeit.
4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui, but; tamen, attamen, cæterum, verumenimvero*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim,* for; *quia, quippe, quoniam,* because; *quòd,* that, because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque,* therefore; *quapropter, quocirca,* wherefore; *proinde,* therefore; *cum, quum,* seeing, since; *quandoquidem,* forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti,* that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin,* if; *dum, modo, dummodo,* provided, upon condition that; *siquidem,* if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi,* unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem, certe,* at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num,* whether; *ne, annon,* whether, not; *necne,* or, not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero,* now, truly; *quidem, equidem,* indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde,* thereafter; *denique,* finally; *insuper,* moreover; *cæterum,* moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum,* &c. to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions.* Thus, *an, anne,* &c. are either *interrogative adverbs:* as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or *suspensive conjunctions;* as, *Nescio an scribat,* I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, præterquam,* &c.; some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim:* and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi,* &c. Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive,* and *Common.* To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne,* which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics,* because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

Indoctusque pilæ, discive, trochive, quiescit. *Horat.*

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbuteos fœtus montanăque fraga legebant. *Ovid.*

SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expreſſed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in ſentences, is called *Syntax* or *Conſtruction.*

Words in ſentences have a twofold relation to one another; namely, that of *Concord* or Agreement; and that of *Government* or Influence.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in ſome accidents; as, in gender, number, perſon, or caſe.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain caſe, or mode.

General principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every ſentence, there muſt be a verb and a nominative expreſſed or underſtood.
2. Every adjective muſt have a ſubſtantive expreſſed or underſtood.
3. All the caſes of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, muſt be governed by ſome other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a ſubſtantive noun expreſſed or underſtood.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accuſative is governed by an active verb, or by a prepoſition; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative ſtands by itſelf, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a prepoſition expreſſed or underſtood.
9. The infinitive is governed by ſome verb or adjective.

All Sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general diviſion of ſentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative, and one finite verb, that is, a verb in the indicative, ſubjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a ſimple ſentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The SUBJECT is the word which marks the perſon or thing ſpoken of.

The ATTRIBUTE expreſſes what we affirm concerning the ſubject; as,

The boy reads his leſſon: Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of diſcourſe, or the perſon ſpoken of; "reads his leſſon," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the ſubject. *The diligent boy reads his leſſon carefully at home.* Here we have ſtill the ſame ſubject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the ſame attribute, "read his leſſon," with the circumſtances of manner and place ſubjoined, "carefully," "at home."

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in ſentences, 1. A ſubſtantive with a ſubſtantive. 2. An adjective with a ſubſtantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one Subſtantive with another.*

RULE 1. Subſtantives ſignifying the ſame thing, agree in caſe; as,

Cicĕro orātor, Cicero the Orator; *Ciceronis oratōris*, Of Cicero the Orator. *Urbs Athēnæ*, The city Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum*, Of the city Athens.

2. *Agreement of an Adjective with a Subſtantive.*

2. An Adjective agrees with a Subſtantive, in gender, number, and caſe; as,

Bonus vir, a good man;	*Boni viri*, good men.
Fœmina caſta, a chaſte woman;	*Fœminæ caſtæ*, chaſte women.
Dulce pomum, a ſweet apple;	*Dulcia poma*, ſweet apples.

And ſo through all the caſes and degrees of compariſon.

This rule applies alſo to Adjective pronouns and Participles; as, *Meus Liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled.

Obſ. 1. The ſubſtantive is frequently underſtood, or its place ſupplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triſte*, ſc. *negotium*, a ſad thing, Virg.; *Tuum ſcire*, the ſame with, *tua ſcientia*, thy knowledge, Perſ. We ſometimes however find the ſubſtantive underſtood in the feminine; as, *Non poſteriores feram*, ſup. *partes*, Ter.

Obſ. 2. An adjective often ſupplies the place of a ſubſtantive; as, *Certus amicus*, A ſure friend: *Bona ferina*, Good veniſon; *Summum bonum*, The chief good: *Homo* being underſtood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*.

Obſ. 3. Theſe adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *ſummus*, *ſupremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, uſually ſignify *the firſt part*, *the middle part*, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the higheſt part of a tree.

Obſ. 4. Whether the adjective or ſubſtantive ought to be placed firſt in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the ſubſtantive be a monoſyllable, and the adjective a polyſyllable, the ſubſtantive is elegantly put firſt; as, *vir clariſſimus*, *res præſtantiſſima*, &c.

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

3. A Verb agrees with the Nominative before it in number and perſon; as,

Ego lego, I read; *Nos legimus*, We read.
Tu ſcribis, Thou writeſt *or* you write; *Vos ſcribitis*, Ye *or* you write.
Præceptor docet, The maſter teaches; *Præceptores docent*, Maſters teach.

And ſo through all the modes, tenſes, and numbers.

Obſ. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the firſt perſon; *tu* and *vos* of the ſecond perſon; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the firſt and ſecond perſon in Latin is ſeldom expreſſed, unleſs for the ſake of emphaſis or diſtinction; as, *Tu es patronus, tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis, ego ſcribo.*

Obſ. 2. An infinitive, or ſome part of a ſentence, often ſupplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri eſt turpe*, to lie is baſe; *Diu non perſtatum tenuit dictatorem*; The ſacrifice not being attended with favourable omens detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to expreſs the meaning more ſtrongly; as, *Facere quæ libet*, id *eſt eſſe regem*, Sall.

Obſ. 3. The infinitive mode often ſupplies the place of the third perſon of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugëre*, the ſoldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere cœperunt*. *Invidëre omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obſ. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the ſingular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo ſtat*, or *ſtant*; The multitude ſtands, *or* ſtand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb ſingular, expreſſes

many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi*. *Pars obnixæ trudunt*, sc. *formicæ*, Virg. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. Æn. vii. 624.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

¶ IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as, *Guadeo te valere*, I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the participle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse* must frequently be supplied especially after participles; as, *Hostium, exercitum cæsum fusumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus susceptorum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod, ut, ne*, or *quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem: Jubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis: Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat: non dubito eum fecisse*, or *quin fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amare*. *Miror, si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superârit*, for *populum R. superasse*, Nep.

The same case after a Verb as before it.

¶ V. Any Verb may have the same case after it as before it *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

Ego sum discipulus,	I am a scholar.
Tu vocaris Joannes,	You are named John.
Illa incedit regina,	She walks as a queen.
Scio illum haberi sapientem,	I know that he is esteemed wise
Scio vos esse discipulos,	I know that you are scholars

So *Redeo iratus, jaceo fupplex; Evadent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolefcens; nolo effe longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; Malim videri timidus, quam parum prudens, *Cic.* Non licet mihi effe negligenti, *Cic.* Natura dedit omnibus effe beatis, *Claud. Cupio me effe clementem; cupio non putari mendacem; Vult effe medium*, fc. *fe*, He wifhes to be neuter, Cic. *Difce effe pater; Hoc eft effe patrem?* fc. *eum*, Ter.

Obf. 1. This rule implies nothing elfe but the agreement of an adjective with a fubftantive, or of one fubftantive with another; for thofe words in a fentence which refer to the fame object, muft always agree together, how much foever disjoined.

Obf. 2. The verbs which moft frequently have the fame cafe after them as before them, are,

1. Subftantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *exifto; eo, venio, fto, fedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio*, &c.

2. The paffive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*, to which add, *videor, exiftimor, creor, conftituor, falutor, defignor*, &c.

Thefe, and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accufative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accufative; as, *Intereft omnium effe bonos*, fcil. *fe*; It is the intereft of all to be good. In fome cafes we can ufe either the nom. or acc. promifcuoufly; as, *Cupio dici doctus* or *doctum*, fc. *me dici; Cupio effe clemens, non putari mendax; vult effe medius.*

Obf. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed betwixt two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos eft decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erant*, Ovid. But fometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio eft*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ovid. So, when an adjective is applied to two fubftantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that fubftantive which is moft the fubject of difcourfe; as, *Oppidum eft appellatum Poffidonia*, Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer fubftantive; as, *Non omnis error ftultitia eft dicenda*, Cic.

Obf. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the fubftantive verb *effe*, has the dative before it, governed by an impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accufative; as, *Licet mihi effe beato*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi effe beatum, me* being underftood; thus, *licet mihi* (me) *effe beatum.* The dative before *effe* is often to be fupplied; as, *Licet effe beatum*, One may be happy, *fcil. alicui* or *homini.*

Obf. 5. The poets ufe certain forms of expreffion, which are not

to be imitated in prose; thus, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronĕpos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*; Ovid. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. *Acceptum refĕro versibus esse nocens*; Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse focer*; Lucan.

GOVERNMENT.

I. The GOVERNMENT of SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, *(when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former;)* as,

Amor Dei, The love of God; *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature. *Domus Cæsăris*, The house of Cæsar, *or* Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is govened by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis*; *Ænis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *Caritas patris*, signifies either, The affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei* always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectŏris Andromache*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly among the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended; Virg.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia, inimicitia, pax, cum aliquo; Amor in*, vel *erga, aliquem; Gaudium de re; Cura de aliquo; Mentio illius*, vel *de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*, &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent *to* Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill *in* the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of *me*.

So alſo adjective pronouns when uſed as ſubſtantives, or having a noun underſtood; as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus,* &c. The book of him, or his book, ſc. *hominis*: The book of her, or her book, ſc. *feminæ*. *Libri eorum*, v. *earum* their books. *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whoſe book; *Quorum libri*, whoſe books, &c. But we always ſay, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noſter*, not *noſtri*; *ſuum jus*, not *ſui*.

When a paſſive ſenſe is expreſſed, we uſe *mei, tui, ſui, noſtri, veſtri, noſtrum, veſtrum*; but we uſe their poſſeſſives, when an active ſenſe is expreſſed: as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *amor meus*, my love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the poſſeſſives ſometimes uſed paſſively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. *Labor mei*, My labour, Plaut.

The poſſeſſives *meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter*, have ſometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum hominis ſimplicis*, Cic. 2. Phil. Noſter duorum eventus, *Liv.* Tuum ipſius ſtudium, *Cic.* Mea ſcripta timentis, &c. *Hor.* Solius meum peccatum corrigi non poteſt, *Cic.* Id maxime quemque decet, quod eſt cujuſque ſuum maxime, *Id.*

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are uſed, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative: as, *Cato interfecit ſe; Miles defendit ſuam vitam; Dicit ſe ſcriptorem eſſe.* We find however *is* or *ille* ſometimes uſed in examples of this kind; *as*, Deum agnoſcimus ex operibus ejus, *Cic.* Perſuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiſcantur, *for* una ſecum. *Caſ.*

VII. If the latter Subſtantive have an Adjective of praiſe or diſpraiſe joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir ſummæ prudentiæ, or *ſummâ prudentiâ*, A man of great wiſdom.
Puer probæ indolis, or *probâ indole*, A boy of a good diſpoſition.

Obſ. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing ſubſtantive, but by ſome preposition underſtood; as, *cum, de, ex, in*, &c. Thus, *Vir ſummâ prudentiâ*, is the ſame with *vir cum ſummâ prudentiâ*.

Obſ. 2. In ſome phraſes the genitive is only uſed; as, *Magnæ formicæ laboris*, The laborious ant: *Vir imi ſubſellii, homo minimi pretii*, a perſon of the loweſt rank. Non multi cibi hoſpitem accipies, ſed multi joci, *Cic.* *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. Mira ſum alacritate ad litigandum, *Cic.* *Capite aperto eſt*, His head is bare; *obvoluto*, covered. Capite et ſupercilio ſemper eſt raſo, *Id.* Mulier magno natu, *Liv.* Sometimes both are uſed in the ſame ſentence; as, Adoleſcens eximiâ ſpe, ſummæ virtutis, *Cic.* The ablative more frequently occurs in proſe than the genitive.

Obſ. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in caſe with the former ſubſtantive, and then the latter ſubſtantive is put in the ablative: thus, we ſay either, *Vir præſtantis ingenii*, or *præſtantis ingenio*; or *Vir præſtans ingenio*, and ſometimes *præſtans, ingenii*. Among the poets the latter ſubſtantive is frequently put in the accuſative by a Greek conſtruction, *ſecundum*, or *quod ad* being underſtood by the figure commonly called *Synecdoche*; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus ſecundum or* quod ad *membra*, or *habens membra fracta. Os humeroſque deo ſimilis.* Virg.

Adjectives taken as Subſtantives.

RULE VIII. An Adjective in the neuter gender without a ſubſtantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei eſt?* What is the matter.

Obſ. 1. This manner of expreſſion is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much uſed by the beſt writers; as, Plus eloquentiæ, minus ſapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii; Quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres, *Liv.*

Obſ. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like ſubſtantives, generally ſignify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum*, &c. To which add, *hoc, illud, iſtud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam*, &c. *Plus* and *quid* almoſt always govern the genitive, and therefore by ſome are thought to be ſubſtantives.

Obſ. 3. *Nihil*, and theſe neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid*, &c. elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the firſt and ſecond declenſion in the genitive; as, *nihil ſinceri*, no ſincerity; but ſeldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declenſion, particularly thoſe which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid boſtile timarent*, not *boſtilis*: We find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. 5. 3.

Obſ. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender alſo govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Anguſta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris operta, loca* being underſtood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli*, ſc. *negotia*, Horat. An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a ſubſtantive underſtood; as, *Amicus Cæſaris, Patria, Ulyſſis*, &c.

Opus and *Uſus*.

RULE IX. *Opus* and *Uſus*, ſignifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Eſt opus pecuniâ, There is need of money; *Uſus viribus*, Need of ſtrength.

Obſ. 1. *Opus* and *uſus* are ſubſtantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themſelves, but by ſome preposition, as *pro* or the like, underſtood. They ſometimes alſo, although more rarely,

govern the genitive; as, Lectionis opus est, *Quinct.* Operæ usus est, *Liv.*

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We need a general, Cic. Dices nummos mihi opus esse, *Id.* Nobis exempla opus sunt, *Id.*

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haste; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimules*, Plaut. It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est; si opus sit*, &c.

II. GOVERNMENT of ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as, *Avidus gloriæ*, Desirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax, edax, ferax, tenax, pertinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans, appĕtens, cupiens, insŏlens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuetus, insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire; as, *avarus, cupidus, studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting; as, *callidus, cautus; certior, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens*, &c. *Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, immĕmor, rudis; ambiguus, dubius, suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius, curiosus, sollicitus, providus, diligens; incuriosus, securus, negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus; impavidus, interritus, intrepidus.* 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innocens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations;

as, *æger animi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, lætus, præstans, animi; modicus voti; integer vitæ; seri studiorum*, Hor. But we say *æger pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinâ, modicus cultu; Lætus negotio, de re*, or *propter rem*, &c. and never *æger pedum*, &c.

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem; doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction, as, avidus in pecuniis, *Cic.* Avidior ad rem, *Ter.* Jure consultus & peritus, *or* juris, *Cic.* Rudis literarum, in jure civili, *Cic.* Rudis, arte, ad mala, *Ovid.* Doctus Latine, Latinis literis, *Cic.* Assuetus labore, in omnia, *Liv.* Mensæ herili, *Virg.* Insuetus moribus Romanis, in the dat. *Liv.* Laboris, ad onera portanda, *Cæs.* Dosuetus bello, & triumphis in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. *Virg.* Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliquâ; diligens in, ad, de, *Cic.* Negligens in aliquem, in *or* de re: Reus de vi, criminibus, *Cic.* Certior factus de re, *rather than* rei, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causa, in re*, or *in negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causâ* or *in re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, *or* in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Aliquis philosophorum,	Some one of the philosophers.
Senior fratrum,	The elder of the brothers.
Doctissimus Romanorum,	The most learned of the Romans.
Quis nostrum?	Which of us?
Una musarum,	One of the muses.
Octavus sapientum,	The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius, nullus, solus*, &c. *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds; also Comparatives Su-

perlatives, and some Numerals; as, *unus, duo, tres; primus, secundus*, &c. To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius.*

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agree with the former; as, Indus fluminum maximus, *Cic.* Rarely with the latter; as, Delphinus animalium velocissimum, *Plin.* The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum.*

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex*, or *in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, Pulcherrimus ante omnes, *for* omnium, *Virg.* Primus inter omnes, *Id.*

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis, *Cic.* Maximus stirpis, *Liv.* Ultimos orbis, *Hor.*

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two.* In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two*; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three*: but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

2. *Adjectives governing the Dative.*

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

Utilis bello,	Profitable for war.
Perniciosus reipublicæ,	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
Similis patri,	Like to his father.

Or thus, *any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber.—Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, pernicious, pestifer.

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, lætus, suavis.—Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, Addictus, æquus, amicus, bene-

volus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius. —Adverſus, æmulus, aſper, crudelis, contrarius, infenſus, infeſtus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, inviſus, invidus, iratus, odioſus, ſuſpectus, trux.

4. Of clearneſs or obſcurity; as, Apertus, certus, compertus, conſpicuus, manifeſtus, notus, perſpicuus.——Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obſcurus.

5. Of nearneſs; as, Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, ſocius, vicinus.

6. Of fitneſs or unfitneſs; as, Aptus, appoſitus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus.——Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens.

7. Of eaſe or difficulty; as, Facilis, levis, obvius, pervius.—— Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laborioſus, periculoſus, invius. To theſe add ſuch as ſignify propenſity or readineſs; as, Pronus, proclivis, propenus, promptus, paratus.

8. Of equality or inequality; as, Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, ſuppar.——Inæqualis, impar, diſpar, diſcors. Alſo of likeneſs or unlikeneſs, as, Similis, æmulus, geminus.——Diſſimilis, abſonus, alienus, diverſus, diſcolor.

9. Several adj. compounded with CON; as, Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, conſanguineus, conſentaneus, conſonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguus; as, Mari aër continens eſt, *Cic.*

To theſe add many other Adjectives of various ſignifications; as, Obnoxius, ſubjectus, ſupplex, credulus, abſurdus, decorus, deformis, præſto, ſecundus, &c.—particularly,

Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative; as,

Amandus vel *amabilis omnibus*, To be loved by all men.

So mors eſt terribilis malis; Optabilis omnibus pax; Adhibenda eſt nobis diligentia, *Cic.* Semel omnibus calcanda eſt via lethi, *Hor.* Alſo ſome participles of the perfect tenſe; as, *Bella matribus deteſtata*, hated by, Hor.

Verbals in DUS are often conſtrued with the prep. *a*; as, Deus eſt venerandus & colendus a nobis, *Cic.* Perfect participles are uſually ſo; as, *Mors Craſſi eſt a multis deſleta*, rather than, *multis, deſleta*, Cic. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus*, &c. hardly ever *tibi*.

Obſ. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of ſpeech; but put after them, to expreſs the object to which their ſignification refers.

The particle *to* in Engliſh is often to be ſupplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being underſtood.

Obſ. 2. Subſtantives have likewiſe ſometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille eſt pater, dux*, vel *filius mihi*, He is father, leader, *or* ſon

me: so, Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c. *Hor.* Exitium pecori, *Virg.* Virtutibus hostis, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive: *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius,* and *adversus*; as, *Similis tibi,* or *tui*; *Superstes patri* or *patris*; *Conscius facinori* or *facinoris*. *Conscius*, and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti.* We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, æquales, communes, inter se*: *Par* & *communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors*; *discordes ad alia*. Liv.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. *alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid.* Many other adjectives governing the dat. are likewise construed with prepositions; as, Attentus quæsitis, *Hor.* Attentus ad rem, *Ter.*

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invisus, iratus, offensus, suspectus,* ALICUI. II. Some with the preposition IN and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, benefacus, gratiosus, injuriosus, liberalis, mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, severus, sordidus, torvus, vehemens,* IN ALIQUEM. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition IN, ERGA, or ADVERSUS going before; as, *Contumax, criminosus, durus, exitiabilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis,* (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* & *intolerabilis*,) *iniquus, favus,* ALICUI, or IN ALIQUEM. *Benevolus, benignus, molestus,* ALICUI, or ERGA ALIQUEM. *Mitis, comis,* IN, or ERGA ALIQUEM, and ALICUI. *Pervicax* ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. *Crudelis* IN ALIQUEM, seldom ALICUI. *Amicus, æmulus, infensus, infestus,* ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratuum, *Nep.* Nobis dicto audientes sunt, *not* dicto, *Cicero.*

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. *ad iram*, or *in iram.*

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*, Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti, *Hor.* Jupiter omnibus idem, *Virg.* Eadem illis censemus, *Cic.* But in prose we commonly find, *idem qui, ac, atque*; and also *ut, cum*; as, Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici, *Cic.* Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit; *Ter.* Dianam & Lunam eandem esse putant, *Cic.* Idem faciunt, ut, &c. In eodem loco mecum, *Cic.* But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana.*

We likewise say, *idius ac, atque* or *et*; and so sometimes *similis* & *par*.

3. *Adjectives governing the Ablative.*

RULE XIII. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honore, Worthy of honour. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [strength. *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus, regibus.*

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood: as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, Ortus ex concubitu, *Sallust.* Editus de nympha, *Ovid.*

Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*, Virg. So *Macte esto*, or *macte estote virtutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Jupiter macte virtute esse*, Liv. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

RULE XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *irâ*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi fuimus, *Sen.* Lentulus non verbis inops, *Cic.* Dei plena sunt omnia, *Cic.* Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis, *Juv.* Res est soliciti plena timoris amor, *Ovid.* Amor & melle & felle est fecundissimus, *Plaut.* Fœcunda virorum paupertas fuguit, *Lucan.* Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps, *Curt.* Homo ratione particeps, *Cic.* Nihil insidiis vacuum, *Id.* Vacuas cædis habete manus, *Ovid.*

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, Benignus, exfors, impos, impotens, ineritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus.

2. With the ablative only: Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus.

3. With the genitive more frequently: Compos, consors, egenus, exhæres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis.

4. With the ablative more frequently: Abundans, cassus, extorris, fœtus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus.

5. With both promiscuously: Copiosus, dives, fœcundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.

6. With a preposition; as, Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, à re aliqua; *for* quod ad rem aliquam attinet, *in, or with respect to any thing.* Extorris ab solo patrio, *banished;* Orba ab optimatibus concio, *Liv.* So pauper, tenuis, fœcundus, modicus, parcus in re aliqua. Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus a re aliqua. Potens ad rem, & in re.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king, it is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicere, non putarum*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. Laudare se vani; vituperare stulti est, *Sen.* Hominis est errare; Arrogantis est negligere, quid de se quisque sentiat, *Cic.* Pecus est Meliboei, *Virg.* Hæc sunt hominis; *Ter.* Pauperis est numerare pecus, *Ovid.* Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis, *Cic.*

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted; as, *Tuum est*, It is your duty; *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri.* Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis.*

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are sometimes expressed; as, Munus est principum; Tuum est hoc munus, *Cic.* Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis, puto, *Ter.* In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est* (liber) *fratris.* In

like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli, scil. causâ *or* facta, *Sall.* Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est, *for* ad æquandam libertatem pertinet, *Liv.*

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus, or tui muneris:* So *mos est* vel *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic.

XVI. *Miseror, misereſco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive; as,

Miserere civium tuorum, Pity your countrymen.

Satagit rerum suarum, He is sufficiently employed about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo, & fallor, fastidio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor; as, Ne angas te animi, *Plaut.* Laborum decipitur, *Hor.* Discrucior animi, *Ter.* Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi, *vel* animo; *but we always say*, Pendemus animis, *not* animorum, *are in suspense. Cic.* Justitiæ prius mirer, *Virg.* In like manner, Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno: *likewise*, adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo: *as*, Abstineto irarum; Desine querelarum; Regnavit populorum, *Hor.* Desistere pugnæ, *Virg.* Quarum rerum condixit, *Liv.*

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed; thus, Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, animo. Hoc animum meum excruciat. Fastidio, miror, vereor, aliquem, *vel* aliquid. Lætor aliquâ re. Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quod, ut, ne*, and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, Desino aliquid, & ab aliquo, *to give over;* Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente; Quiesco a labore; Regnare in equitibus, oppidis, *&c.* in, *Cic.* Per urbes, *Virg.* Adipisci id; Frustrari in re; Furere de aliquo, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs: thus, *Miseror fratris*, scil. *causâ; Angor animi*, scil. *dolore*, or *anxietate.*

2. *VERBS governing the Dative.*

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Finis venit imperio, An end is come to the empire, Liv.

Animus redit hostibus, Courage returns to the enemy, Id.

Tibi seris, tibi metis, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So Non nobis ſolum nati ſumus, *Cic,* Multa male eveniunt bonis, *Id.* Sol lucet etiam ſceleratis, *Sen.* Hæret lateri lethalis arundo, *Virg.*

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in Engliſh by *to* or *for*; nor are theſe particles always the ſign of the dative in Latin, it will be neceſſary to be more particular.

I. *Sum,* and its compounds, govern the dative, (except *poſſum*;) as,

Præfuit exercitui,	He commanded the army.
Adfuit precibus,	He was preſent at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo, to have,* governs the dative of a perſon; as,

Eſt mihi liber,	A book is to me, that is, I have a book.
Sunt mihi libri,	Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
Dico libros eſſe mihi,	I ſay that I have books.

This is more frequently uſed than *habeo librum; habeo libros.* In like manner *deſum* inſtead of *careo*; as, *Liber deeſt mihi,* I want a book; *Libri deſunt mihi; Scio libros deeſſe mihi,* &c.

II. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, ſatisdo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico tibi, &c.

III. Many Verbs compounded with theſe nine prepoſitions, AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PRÆ, SUB, and SUPER, govern the dative; as,

1. Accedo, accreſco, accumbo, acquieſco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adſto, adſtipulor, advolvor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aſpiro, aſſentior, aſſideo, aſſiſto, affluesco, affurgo.

2. Antecello, anteeo, anteſto, anteverto.

3. Colludo, concino, conſono, convivo.

4. Incumbo, indormio, inhio, ingemiſco, inhæreo, inſideo, inſto, inſiſto, inſudo, inſulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, immineo, immorior, immoror, impendeo.

5. Intervenio, intermico, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo.

6. Obrepo, obluctor, obtrecto, obſtrepo, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurſo, obſto, obſiſto, obvenio.

7. Præcedo, præcurro, præco, præſideo, præluceo, præmiteo, præſto, prævaleo, prævèrto.

8. Succedo, ſuccumbo, ſufficio, ſuffragor, ſubcreſco, ſubvoleo, ſubjaceo, ſubrepo.

9. Supervenio, ſupercurro, ſuperſto.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which ſignify,

1. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio, prōfum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo *for* prospicio. *Likewise*, Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, infidior.

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignoſco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor. *Likewise*, Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor. *Likewise*, Derogo, detraho, invideo, æmulor.

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, *for* modum adhibeo. *Likewise*, Pareo, auscultо, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigeror, obsecundo. *Likewise*, Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor. *Likewise*, Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor.

4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, iraſcor, succenſeo.

5. To trust; as, Fido, confido, credo, diffido.

To these add Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, desperо, operor, præstōlor, prevaricor, recipio, *to promise*: renuncio; respondeo, *to answer or satisfy*; tempero, studeo, vaco, *to apply*; convicior.

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo*, and *offendo*, govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, averſor; &c. aliquem, *not* alicui.

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as,

Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, *or* aliquem, *to go before, to excel.*

Acquiescere, rei, re, *v.* in re. Adequitare, portæ; Syracusas.

Adjacere, mari, *v.* mare, *to lie near.*

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, *to swim to.*

Adversari ei, *rarely* eum, *to oppose.*

Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, *to fall at one's knees.*

Advolare ei, ad eum; rostra.

Adstare rei *v.* homini; rem *v.* hominem; aliquid alicui, *to breathe upon.*

Adulari ei, *v.* eum. Allabi oris; aures ejus, Virg. ad extа, Liv.
Apparere consuli, *to attend;* ad solium Jovis; Res apparet mihi, *appears.*
Appropinquare Britanniæ, portam, ad portam, *to approach.*
Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animalia, *to rule over,* Ovid.
Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, *to agree.*
Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re.
Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam.
Impendēre alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to hang over.*
Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, *v.* in eum, *seized.*
Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon;* labori, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to.*
Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio vestitu, Ter.
Inhiare auro, bona ejus, *to gape after.* Innasci agris, in agris, *to grow in.*
Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on.*
Insultare rei & homini, *v.* hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over.*
Latet res mihi, *v.* me, *is unknown to me.* Mederi ei; cupiditates, *to cure.*
Ministrare ei, *to serve;* arma, *to furnish.*
Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, *to rule.*
Nocere ei, *rarely* eum, Plaut.
Nubere alicui; in familiam: nupta ei & cum eo, Cic.
Obrepere ei & eum, *to creep upon;* in animos; ad honores.
Obstrepere auribus & aures. Obtrectare ei, laudibus, ejus, *to detract from.*
Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem nubes, *shades.* Palpari alicui & aliquem.
Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo; Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.
Præstolari alicui & aliquem.
Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad genua, Liv. ad pedes, *to fall.*

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coco, alicui, *for* eum aliquo; 2. Distare, dissentire, discrepare, differre rei alicui, *for* a re aliqua. We also say, Contendunt, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se; *and* contendere, pugnare contra & adversus aliquem.

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi,* & *pro te,* I am afraid for you, *or* for your safety; but *timeo, horreo te,* v. *a te,* I fear or dread you as an enemy: So *Consulo, prospicio, caveo tibi,* I consult *or* provide for your safety; but *consulo te,* I ask your advice; *prospicio hoc,*

I foresee this: *Studere aliquid*, to desire; *alicui*, to favour; *alicui rei, rem, & in re*, to apply to a thing. So *Æmulor tibi*, I envy; *te*, I imitate; *Auscultо tibi*, I obey or listen to; *te*, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour, *rem*, I desire; *Fœnero, & -or tibi*, I lend you on interest; *abs te*, I borrow; *Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc fœneraret*, should not return with interest, or bring usury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are construed with the prep. *ad*; as,

Eo, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, v. hominem. Sometimes however in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, It clamor cœlo, *for* ad cœlum, *Virg.*

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative.*

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

Ire iter *or* viam; Pugnare pugnam *or* prælium: Currere cursum; Canere cantilenam; Vivere vitam; Ludere ludum; Sequi sectam; Somniare somnium, &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, Corydon ardebat Alexin, scil. propter, i. e. vehementer amabat, *Virg.* Currimus æquor, scil. per, *Id.* So, comptos arsit adulteri crines, *Hor.* Saltare Cyclopa; olet hircum; Sulcos et vineta crepat mera, *Hor.* Vox hominem sonat: Sudare mella, *Virg.* Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Athone perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset, sc. per, *Cic.* Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, Clamare aliquem nomine. *Virg.* Callere jura; Mærere mortem; Horret iratum mare, *Hor.*

Sometimes instead of the accusative neuter verbs have an ablative; as, Ire itinere; dolere dolore, vicem ejus; gaudere gaudio; mori v. obire morte; vivere vitâ; Ludere aleam, v. â: manare, pluere, rorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid *vel* aliquo. Erubescere jura, *Virg.* origine, *Tacit.* equo vehi, *Curt.*

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorrere famam, *to dread infamy*, Liv. a litibus; ab uxore ducenda, *to be averse from*; Id. a meis moribus abhorret, *it inconsisteut with*, Cic.

Aboleremonumenta viri, *to abolish* Virg. Iis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat, *Liv.*

Adolere penates, *to burn*, Virg. Ætas adolevit; adolevit ad ætatem, Plaut.

Declinare ictum, *to avoid*; loco; agmen aliquo, *to remove*.

Degenerare animos, *to weaken*; patri; a virtute majorum, *to degenerate.*

Durare adolescentes labore, *to harden*; Res durat ad breve tempus; In ædibus durare nequeo, Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, *to lay*; Hos ut sequar inclinat animus, *inclines*; acies inclinat, *v.* inclinatur, *gives way.*

Laborare arma, *to forge*; morbo, a dolore, e renibus, *to be ill*; de re aliqua, *to be concerned.*

Morari iter, *to stop*; in urbe, *to stay*; Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind.*

Properare pecuniam hæredi *Hor.* in urbem; ad unam sedem, Ovid.

Quadrare acervum, *to square*, Hor. aliquid ad normam; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, *to fit.*

Suppeditare copiam dicendi, *to furnish*; suppeditat ei oratio, *is afforded*; Manubiæ in fundamenta vix suppeditârunt, *were sufficient*, Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, Id lacrumat, Id succenset, *Ter.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. Tum prora avertit, *sc.* se, *Virg.* Flumina præcipitant, *sc.* se, *Id.* Obiit, *sc.* mortem, *Ter.* Cum faciam vitulâ, *sc.* sacra, *Virg.* Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum; *for* dulcem sermonem, decorum risum, *Hor.*

XIX. *Recordor, memini, reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectionis or *lectionem*,	I remember the lesson.
Obliviscor injuriæ or *injuriam*,	I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, Memini videre virginem, *Ter.* Oblitus est, quid paulo ante postulasset, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, Memini alicujus, *vel* de aliquo. So *recordor*, when it signifies to recollect; as, Velim scire ecquid de te recordere, *Cic.*

4. *Verbs governing the Ablative.*

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis,	He abounds in riches.
Caret omni culpa,	He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, Abundo, affluo, exubĕro, redundo, suppedito, scateo, &c.; of want, Careo, egeo, indĭgeo, vaco, deficior, desistuor, &c.

Obſ. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, Eget æris, *Hor.* Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, *Cic.*

Obſ. 2. The ablative after theſe verbs is governed by ſome preposition underſtood; and ſometimes we find it expreſſed; as, Vacat a culpa, *Liv.*

XXI. *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, veſcor,* govern the ablative, as,

Utitur fraude, *He uſes deceit.* Abutitur libris, *He abuſes books.*

To theſe add, gaudeo, creor, naſcor, fido, victito, conſto, laboro, *for* male me habeo, *to be ill;* paſcor, epulor, nitor, &c.

Obſ. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, Potiri urbis, *Sal.* And we always ſay, Potiri rerum, *to poſſeſs the chief command;* never *rebus, imperio* being underſtood.

Obſ. 2. Potior, fungor, veſcor, epulor, *and* paſcor, ſometimes have an accuſative; as, Potiri urbem, *Cic.* Munera fungi, *Tacit.* Paſcuntur ſilvas, Virg. And in antient writers *utor, abutor,* and *fruor;* as, Uti conſilium, *Plaut.* Operam abutitur, *Ter. Depaſco* and *depaſcor* always take an accuſative; as, Depaſcitur artus, *Virg.*

§ 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. *Verbs governing two Datives.*

XXII. *Sum* taken for *affero (to bring)* governs two datives, the one of a perſon, and the other of a thing; as,

Eſt mihi voluptati, It is, *or* brings a pleaſure to me.

Two datives are alſo put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco,* and ſome others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio,* I am blamed for that. So, Miſit mihi muneri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet ſibi laudi; Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui, *Liv.*

Obſ. 1. Inſtead of the dative, we often uſe the nominative, or the accuſative; as, *Eſt exitium pecori,* for *exitio; Dare aliquid alicui donum,* or *dono; Dare nuptum,* or *nuptui.* When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewiſe govern an accuſative either expreſſed or underſtood; as, *Dare crimini ei,* ſc. *id.*

Obſ. 2. The dative of the perſon is often to be ſupplied; as, *Eſt exemplo, indicio, præſidio, uſui,* &c. ſcil. *mihi, alicui, hominibus,* or ſome ſuch word. So, *ponere, oppenere, pignori,* ſc. *alicui,* to pledge; *Canere receptui,* ſc. *ſuis militibus,* to ſound a retreat; *Habere curæ, quæſtui, odio, voluptati, religioni, ſtudio, ludibrio, deſpicatui,* &c. ſc. *ſibi.*

Obſ. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Eſt mihi nomen Alexandro,* my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Eſt mihi nomen Alexander;* or more rarely with the genitive, *Eſt mihi nomen Alexandri.*

2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,	He accuses me of theft.
Meipsum inertiæ condemno,	I condemn myself of lazineſs.
Illum homicidii absolvunt.	They acquit him of manſlaughter.
Monet me officii,	He admoniſhes me of my duty.

Verbs of accuſing are, Accūſo, ago, appello, arceſſo, anquiro, arguo, defĕro, inſimŭlo, poſtŭlo, alligo, aſtringo; of condemning, Damno, condemno, infāmo, noto; of acquitting, Abſolvo, libĕro, purgo; of admoniſhing, Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio.

Obſ. 1. Verbs of accuſing and admoniſhing, inſtead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, Monere aliquem officii, *or* de officio; Accuſare aliquem furti, *or* de furto. De vi condemnati ſunt, *Cic.*

Obſ. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative uſually without a prepoſition; as, *Damnare, poſtulare, abſolvere eum criminis*, v. *capitis*; & *crimine*, v. *capite*; alſo *Abſolvo me peccato*, Liv. And we always ſay, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to puniſh one capitally, *or* with death.

Obſ. 3. Many verbs of accuſing, &c. are not conſtrued with the acc. of a perſon and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we ſay, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumnior, criminor, excuſo*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiæ*. We ſometimes alſo find *accuſo incuſo*, &c conſtrued in this manner; as, Accuſare inertiam adoleſcentium, *for* adoleſcentes inertiæ, *Cic.* Culpam arguo, *Liv.* We ſay, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuſe one of theft, Cic.

Obſ. 4. Verbs of accuſing and admoniſhing ſometimes govern two accuſatives, when join[illegible] with *hoc, illud, iſtud, id, unum, multa*, &c. as, *Moneo, accuſo te illud.* We ſeldom however ſay, *Errorem te moneo*, but *erroris*, or *de errore.*

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accuſative, govern ſuch genitives as theſe, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

Æſtimo te magni,	I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, Æſtimo, exiſtimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo. They govern ſeveral other genitives; as, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, aſſis, nihili, teruncii, hujus.

Obſ. 1. *Æſtimo* ſometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æſtima te magno, permagno, parvo*, ſcil. *pretio*: and alſo *nihilo*. We likewiſe ſay, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco.*

Obſ. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *conſulo*; as, *Hoc conſulo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obſ. 3. The genitive after all theſe verbs is governed by ſome ſubſtantive underſtood; as, Arguere aliquem furti, ſcil. de crimine furti; Æſtimo rem magni, ſcil. pretii, *or* pro re magni pretii; Conſulo boni, i. e. ſtatuo *or* cenſeo eſſe factum *or* munus boni viri, *or* animi; Monere aliquem officii, i. e. officii cauâ, *or* de re *or* negotio officii.

3. *VERBS governing the Accuſative and the Dative.*

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accuſative and dative; as,

Compăro Virgilium Homero,	*I compare Virgil to Homer.*
Suum cuique tribuito,	*Give every one his own.*
Narras fabulam ſurdo,	*You tell a ſtory to a deaf man.*
Eripuit me morti,	*He reſcued me from death.*

Or thus, any active verb may govern the accuſative and the dative, (when together with the object of the action, we expreſs the perſon or thing with relation to which it is exerted;) as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the leſſon to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves, *Virg.* Paupertas ſæpe ſuadet mala hominibus, *adviſes men to do bad things*, Plaut. Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus, *to order, to furniſh*, Cæſ.

Obſ. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with ſome others, are often conſtrued with a prepoſition; as, Comparare unam rem cum alia, & ad aliam, *or* comparare res inter ſe: Eripuit me morti, morte, a *or* ex morte: Mittere epiſtolam alicui, *or* ad aliquem: Intendere telum alicui, *or* in aliquem: Incidere æri, in æs, *or* in ære: and ſo in many others.

Obſ. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accuſative, are conſtrued differently; as,

Circumdare mœnia oppido, *or* oppidum mœnibus, *to ſurround a city with walls.*

Intercludere commeatum alicui, *or* aliquem commeatu, *to intercept one's proviſions.*

Donare, prohibere rem alicui, *or* aliquem re, *to give one a preſent, to hinder one from a thing.*

Mactare hoſtiam Deo, *or* Deum hoſtiâ, *to ſacrifice.*

Impertire ſalutem alicui, *or* aliquem ſalute, *to ſalute one.*

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, *or* Romanos Galliâ, *he debarred the Romans from Gaul.*

Induere, exuere veſtem ſibi, *or* ſe veſte, *to put on, to put off one's clothes.*

Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, *to ease one's distress.*

Minari aliquid alicui, *or sometimes* alicui aliquo, Cic. *to threaten one with any thing;* Cæsari gladio, *Sall.*

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, & de hac re, *I congratulate you on this.*

Restituere alicui sanitatem, *or* aliquem sanitati, *to restore to health.*

Aspergere labem alicui, *or* aliquem labe, *to put an affront on one;* aram sanguine. Litare Deum sacris, & sacra Deo.

Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.

Exprobare vitium ei v. in eo, *to upbraid.*

Occupare pecuniam alicui, & apud aliquem, *i. e.* pecuniam fœnori locare, *to place at interest,* Cic.

Opponere se morti, & ad mortem. Renunciare id ei, & ad eum.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; *also* Hortor, *and* invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesso; *thus,* Ad laudem milites hortatur; Ad prætorem hominem traxit, *Cic.* But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, Inferre Deos Latio, *for* in Latium, *Virg.* Invitare aliquem hospitio, *or* in hospitium, *Cic.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, Nubere alicui, scil. se; Cedere alicui, scil. locum; Detrahere alicui, scil. laudem; Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, Dedit mihi librum, *He gave me a book,* for *to me.*

4. *VERBS governing two Accusatives.*

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Postimus te pacem,	We beg peace of thee.
Docuit me Grammaticam,	He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c. Of teaching, Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem,* He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi,* or *celavit me de hac re.*

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition: as, Rogare rem ab aliquo; Docere aliquem de re, *to inform;* but we do not say, Docere aliquem de grammatica, *but*

The CONSTRUCTION of IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. An Impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Expedit reipublicæ, It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as, *Favetur mihi,* I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor.* *So* Nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi, *&c.* We find however, Hæc ego procurare imperor; Ego cur invideor, *for* imperatur, invidetur mihi, *Hor.*

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest, cæpit, incipit, desinit, debet,* and *solet,* are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, *You cannot be believed;* Mihi non potest noceri, *I cannot be hurt;* Negat jucunde posse vivi sine virtute, *Cic.* Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi & gloriæ invideri solet, *The praise and glory of others use to be envied,* Id.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, Venit in mentem mihi hæc res, *vel* de hac re, *vel* hujus rei, scil. memoria; *This thing came into my mind.* Est curæ mihi hæc res, *vel* de hac re. Doleo, *vel* dolet mihi, id factum esse.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines, &c.* And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to Impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut,* forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, Nobis non licet peccare, *the same with* peccatum; Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam, *i. e.* Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis, *Cic.* Accidit, evenit, contigit, ut ibi essemus. *These nominatives,* hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, *&c.* are sometimes joined to Impersonal verbs; as, Idem mihi licet, *Cic.* Eadem licent, *Catull.*

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, Faciat quod libet, sc. sibi, *Ter.* Stat casus renovare omnes, sc. mihi, *I am resolved,* Virg.

Exc. 1. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* require the genitive; as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium,* It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest,* and *quorum interest;* or *cuja interest,* from *cujus, a, um.*

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil,* &c. also with common nouns;

and with these genitives, Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris; *as*, Hoc parvi refert; Illud mea magni interest, *Cic.* Usque adeo magni refert studium, *Lucr.* Incessus in gravida refert, *Plin.*

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime, *&c. as*, Faciam, quod maxime reipublicæ interesse judicabo, *Cic.* Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*; as, Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant? *Of what importance is it, &c. Plaut.* Magni ad honorem nostrum interest, *Cic.* rarely the dative; as, Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi, *&c. Hor.* Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam, *it is of great importance, Cic.* Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit, *Id.* Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magnis referat, *Liv.* Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas, *Juv.*

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, Interest Ciceronis, *i. e.* est inter negotia Ciceronis: Refert patris, *i. e.* refert se hæc res ad negotia patris: So interest mea, est inter negotia mea.

Exc. II. These five *MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TÆDET,* and *PIGET,* govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you. *Tædet me vitæ,* I am weary of life. *Pœnitet me peccati,* I repent of my sin.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui,* that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me.*

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse,* or *quod peccaverim.* The accusative is frequently understood; as, Scelerum si bene pœnitet, scil. nos. *Horat.*

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as, Ipse sui miseret, *Lucr.*; Nonne hæc te pudent, *Ter.* Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias, *Cic.*

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives, as, Mendicemi vicem miseret me, scil. secundum, *or* quod ad, *Ter.*

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet,* and *piget,* when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum, *Ter.* We likewise find *mi-*

erefcit and *miſeretur* uſed impersonally; as, Miſerefcit me tui, *Ter.*; Miſereatur te fratrum; Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum miſereri poteſt, *Cic.*

Exc. III. *DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT,* and *OPORTET,* govern the accuſative of a perſon, with the infinitive; as,

Delectat me ſtudere, It delights me to ſtudy.
Non decet te rixari, It does not become you to ſcold.

Obſ. 1. Theſe verbs are ſometimes uſed perſonally; as, Parvum parva decent, *Hor.* Eſt aliquid quod non opporteat, etiamſi liceat, *Cic.* Hæc facta ab illo oportebant, *Ter.*

Obſ. 2. *Decet* is ſometimes conſtrued with the dative; as, Ita nobis decet, *Ter.*

Obſ. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the ſubjunctive mode, *ut* being underſtood; as,

Sibi quiſque conſulat oportet, *Cic.* Or with the perfect participle, *eſſe* or *fuiſſe* being underſtood; as, Communicatum oportuit; manſum oportuit; Adoleſcenti morem geſtum oportuit, *The young man ſhould have been humoured, Ter.*

Obſ. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet,* when uſed impersonally, alſo govern the accuſative with the infinitive; as, In lege nullâ eſſe ejuſmodi caput, non te fallit; De Dionyſio fugit me ad te antea ſcribere, *Cic.*

Note. *Attinet, pertinet,* & *ſpectat,* are conſtrued with *ad;* Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conſervari, *Cic.* And ſo perſonally, Ille ad me attinet, *belongs, Ter.* Res ad arma ſpectat, *books, poles, Cic.*

The Construction of the Infinitive.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio diſcere, I deſire to learn.

Obſ. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, Horatius eſt dignus legi, *Quinctil.* And ſometimes depends on a ſubſtantive; as, Tempus equûm fumantia ſolvere colla, *Virg.*

Obſ. 2. The word governing the infinitive is ſometimes underſtood; as, Mene incepto deſiſtere victam, ſcil. decet, *or* par eſt, *Virg.* Videre eſt. Dicere non eſt, ſcil. copia, *or* facultas, *Horat.* And ſometimes the infinitive itſelf is to be ſupplied; as, Socratem fidibus docuit, ſcil. canere, *Cic.* So Diſcere, ſcire fidibus.

Obſ. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi,* The name or noun of the verb; becauſe it is both joined with an adjective like a ſubſtantive, as, *Velle ſuum cuique eſt,* Every one has a will of his own; and likewiſe ſupplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but alſo in all the oblique caſes; as, 1. In the nominative, Latrocinari, fraudare, furtæ eſt,

Cic. Didiciſſe fideliter artes emollit mores, *Ovid.* 2. In the genitive, Peritus cantare, *for* cantandi, *or* cantûs, *Virg.* 3. In the dative, Paratus ſervire, *for* ſervituti, *Sall.* 4. In the accuſative, Da mihi fallere, *for* artem fallendi, *Horat.* Quod faciam ſupereſt, præter amare, nihil, *Ovid.* 5. In the vocative, O vivere noſtrum, ut non ſentientibus effluis! *For* vita noſtra. 6. In the ablative, Dignus amari, *for* amore, *or* qui ametur, *Virg.*

Obſ. 4. Inſtead of the infinitive a different conſtruction is often uſed after verbs of *doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping;* in ſhort, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, Dubitat ita facere, *or more frequently,* an, num, *or* utrum ita facturus ſit; Dubitavit an faceret necne; Non dubito quin fecerit. Vis me facere, *or* ut faciam. Metuit tangi, *or* ne tangatur. Spero te venturum eſſe, *or* fore ut venias. Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te ſupplex venirem, *Cic.* Exiſtimabant futurum fuiſſe ut oppidum amitteretur, *Cæſ.*

Obſ 5. *To,* which in Engliſh is the ſign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, ſee, hear, feel,* and ſome others; as, *I bid him do it:* and in Latin may often be rendered otherwiſe than by the infinitive; as, I am ſent to complain, *Mittor queſtum,* or *ut querar, &c.* Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum;* Time to read, *Tempus legendi;* Fit to ſwim, *Aptus natando;* Eaſy to ſay, *Facile dictu;* I am to write, *Scripturus ſum;* A houſe to let, *or more properly,* to be let, *Domus locanda;* He was left to guard the city, *Relictus eſt ut tueretur urbem.*

The Construction of Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the caſe of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude,* Wanting guile.

Obſ. 1. Paſſive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are uſed as adjectives; as,

Suſpectus mihi, Suſpected by me; Suſpectiores regibus, *Sall. Invifus mihi;* hated by me, or hateful to me: Indies inviſior, *Suet.* Occulta, et moribus non inviſa ſolum, ſed etiam inaudita ſacro, *unſeen, Cic.*

EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often alſo *PERTÆSUS,* govern the accuſative; as, Tædas exoſa jugales, *Ovid.* Plebs conſulum nomen haud ſecus quam regum peroſa erat, *Liv.* Pertæſus ignaviam ſuam; ſemet ipſe, *diſpleaſed with, Suet.* vitam, *weary of, Juſtin.* levitatis, *Cic.*

Verbals in BUNDUS govern the caſe of their own verbs; as, Gratulabundus patriæ, *Juſt.* Vitabundus caſtra hoſtium, *Liv.* So

ſometimes alſo nouns; as, Juſtitia eſt obtemperatio ſcriptis legibus, *Cic.* Inſidiæ conſuli, *Sall.* Domum reditionis ſpe ſublatâ, *Cæſ.* Spectatio ludos, *Plaut.*

Obſ. 2. Theſe verbs, *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio,* with the perfect participle, form a periphraſis ſimilar to what we uſe in Engliſh; as, Compertum habeo, *for* comperi, *I have found, Sall.* Effectum dabo, *for* efficiam; Inventum tibi curabo, et adductum tuum Pamphilum, *i. e.* inveniam et adducam, *Ter.* Sometimes the gerund is uſed with *ad;* as, Tradere ei gentes diripiendas, *or* ad diripiendum, *Cic.* Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum, *or* ad utendum; Miſit mihi librum legendum, *or* ad legendum, &c.

Obſ. 3. Theſe verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, mitto,* &c. are elegantly conſtrued with the participle in *dus* inſtead of the infinitive; as, Funus faciendum curavi, *for* fieri, *or* ut fieret: Columnas ædificandas locavit, *Cic.*

The CONSTRUCTION of GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are conſtrued like ſubſtantive nouns; as,

Studendum eſt mihi, I muſt ſtudy. *Aptus ſtudendo,* Fit for ſtudying.
Tempus ſtudendi, Time of ſtudy.

But more particularly;

I. The Gerund in DUM with the verb *eſt* governs the dative; as,

Legendum eſt mihi, I muſt read. *Moriendum eſt omnibus,* All muſt die.
So *Scio legendum eſſe mihi; moriendum eſſe omnibus,* &c.

Obſ. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or neceſſity; and may be reſolved into *oportet, neceſſe eſt,* or the like, and the infinitive or the ſubjunctive, with the conjunction *ut;* as, Omnibus eſt moriendum, *or* Omnibus neceſſe eſt mori, *or* ut moriantur; *or* Neceſſe eſt ut omnes moriantur. Conſulendum eſt tibi a me, *I muſt conſult for your good; for* Oportet ut conſulam tibi, *Cic.*

Obſ. 2. The dative is often underſtood; as, Orandum eſt, ut ſit mens ſana in corpore ſano, ſc. tibi, *Juv.* Hic, vicendum, aut moriendum, milites, eſt, ſc. vobis, *Liv.* Deliberandum eſt diu, quod ſtatuendum eſt ſemel, ſc. tibi *vel* alicui, *P. Syr.*

II. The gerund in *DI* is governed by ſubſtantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus diſcendi,* Deſirous of learning.

Obſ. This gerund is ſometimes conſtrued with the genitive plural; as, Facultas agrorum condonandi, *for* agros, *Cic.* Copia ſpec-

tandi comœdiarum, *for* comœdias, *Ter.* But chiefly with pronouns; as, In castra venerunt sui purgandi causâ, *Cæs.* Vestri adhortandi causa, *Liv.* Ejus videndi cupidus, sc. fœminæ, *Ter.* The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utilis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo,* scil. *par,* or *habilis,* He is not able to pay. Is finis censendo factus est. *Liv.*

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, Adesse scribendo, *Cic.* Aptat habendo ensem, *for wearing;* Virg.

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum, Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, Ante domandum, *Virg.* Ob absolvendum, *Cic.* Circa movendum, *Quintil.* Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus,* I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a, ab, de, e, ex,* or *in*: as,

Pœna a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved by exercising it.

Defessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi,* or *legere:* only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, Cum Tisidium vocaretur ad imperandum, *i. e.* ut ipsi imperaretur, *to receive orders, Sall.* Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius. Sic enim antiqui loquebantur, *Cic.* i. e. ut tibi imperetur. Urit videndo, *i. e.* dum videtur, *Virg.*

Gerunds turned into participles in dus.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus,* which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Gerundive.
Petendum est mihi pacem,	} or more frequently	Pax est petenda mihi.
Tempus petendi pacem,		Tempus petendæ pacis.
Ad petendum pacem,		Ad petendam pacem.
A petendo pacem,		A petenda pace.

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive; Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi, *Cic.*

Dat. Perpetiendo labori idoneus, *Colum.* Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis, *Tac.* Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis, *Liv.* Oneri ferendo est, sc. aptus *v.* habilis, *Ovid.* Nantus miseriis ferendis, *Ter.* Literis dandis vigilare, *Cic.* Locum oppido condendo capere, *Liv.*

Acc. and abl. Ad defendam Roman ab oppugnanda Capua duces *Romanos* abstrahere, *Liv.* Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorem, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor, utor, abutor, fruor, fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*: but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

The CONSTRUCTION of SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in* um.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum, He hath gone to walk.

So, Ducere cohortes prædatum, *Liv.* Nunc venis irrisum dominum? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum *venio*, *Plaut.*

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat*, *ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction, *Ter.* This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, An credebas illam fine tuâ operâ iri deductum domum? *Which may be thus resolved*, An credebas iri (a te, vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, Dedit filiam nuptum; Cantatum provocemus, *Ter.* Revocatus defensum patriam; Divisit copias hiematum, *Nep.*

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, Venit oratum opem: *or*, 1. Veni

opem orandi causâ, *or* opis orandæ. 2. Venit ad orandum opem, *or* ad orandam opem. 3. Venit opi orandæ. 4. Venit opem oraturus. 5. Venit qui, *or* ut opem oret. 6. Venit opem orare. But the third and the laſt of theſe are ſeldom uſed.

2. *The Supine in* U.

XXXVIII. The ſupine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu. Eaſy to tell, *or* to be told.

So Nihil dictu fædum, viſuque hæc limina tangat; intra quæ puer eſt, *Juv.* Difficilis res eſt inventu verus amicus; Fas v. nefas eſt dictu; Opus eſt ſcitu, *Cic.*

Obſ. 1. The ſupine in *u*, being uſed in a paſſive ſenſe, hardly ever governs any caſe. It is ſometimes, eſpecially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obſonatu redeo*, from getting proviſions, *Plaut.* Primus cubitu ſurgat (*villicus,*) poſtremus cubitum eat, *from bed*, Cato.

Obſ. 2. This ſupine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, Difficile cognitu, cognoſci, *or* ad cognoſcendum; Res facilis ad credendum, *Cic.*

Obſ. 3. The ſupines being nothing elſe but verbal nouns of the fourth declenſion, uſed only in the accuſative and ablative ſingular, are governed in theſe caſes by prepoſitions underſtood; the ſupine in *um* by the prepoſition *ad*, and the ſupine in *u* by the prepoſition *in*.

The CONSTRUCTION of INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. *The Conſtruction of Adverbs.*

XXXIX. Adverbs are joined to Verbs and Participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

Bene ſcribit, He writes well. *Fortiter pugnans*, Fighting bravely.
Servus egregiè fidelis, A ſlave remarkably faithful. *Satis bene*, Well enough.

Obſ. 1. Adverbs are ſometimes likewiſe joined to ſubſtantives; as,

Homerus planè orator; planè noſter, *Cic.* *So*, Hodie mane; cras mane, heri mane; hodie veſperi, *&c.* tam mane, tam veſpere.

Obſ. 2. The adverb for the moſt part in Latin, and always in Engliſh, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obſ. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and Engliſh, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non ſenſerunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *Et ſenſerunt*, And they did perceive; Non poteram non examinari metu, *Cic.* Examples however of the contrary of this ſometimes occur in good

authors both Engliſh and Latin. Thus two or three negative particles are placed before the ſubjunctive mode to expreſs a ſtronger negation. Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum, *Ter.*

But what chiefly deſerves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of compariſon and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè, admodum, vehementer, maximè, perquam, valdè, oppidò,* &c. and *per* in compoſition, are uſually joined to the poſitive; as, *Utrique noſtrum gratum admodum feceris,* You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. *perquam puerile,* very childiſh; *oppidò pauci,* very few; *perfacile eſt,* &c. In like manner, Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum; *as,* In rebus apertiſſimis nimium longi ſumus; parum firmus, multum bonus, *Cic.* Adverbs in *um* are ſometimes alſo joined to comparatives; as, Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanâ, *Liv.*

QUAM is joned to the poſitive or ſuperlative in different ſenſes; as, Quam difficile eſt! *How difficult it is!* Quam crudelis, *or* Ut crudelis eſt! *How cruel he is!* Flens quam familiariter, *very familiarly,* Ter. *So* quam ſeverè, *very ſeverely,* Cic. quam latè, *very widely,* Cæſ. Tam multa, quam, *&c. as many things as, &c.* Quam maximus poteſt copias armat, *as great as poſſible,* Sall. Quam maximus gratias agit, quam primum, quam ſæpiſſime, *Cic.* Quam quiſque peſſimè fecit, tam maximè tutus eſt, *Sall.*

FACILE, for *haud dubiè,* undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to ſuperlatives or words of a ſimilar meaning; as, Facilè doctiſſimus, facilè princeps, *v.* præcipuus. LONGE, to comparatives or ſuperlatives, rarely to the poſitives; as, Longè eloquentiſſimus Plato, *Cic.* Pedibus longè melior Lycus, Virg.

2. CUM, when, is conſtrued with the indicative or ſubjunctive, oftener with the latter; DUM, whilſt, or how long, with the indicative; as, Dum hæc aguntur; Ægroto, dum anima eſt, ſpes eſſe dicitur, *Cic.* Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos, *Ovid.* DUM and DONEC, for *uſquedum,* until, ſometimes with the indicative and ſometimes with the ſubjunctive; as, Operior, dum iſta cognoſco, *Cic.* Haud deſinam, donec perfecero, *Ter.* So QUOAD, for *quamdiu, quantum, quatenus,* as long, as much, as far as; thus, Quoad Catalina fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad poſſem & liceret; quoad progredi potuerit amentia, *Cic.* But QUOAD, until, oftener with the ſubjunctive; as, Theſſalonicæ eſſe ſtatueram, quoad aliquid ad me ſcriberes, *Cic.* but not always; Non faciam finem regandi, quoad nunciatum erit te feciſſe, *Cic.* The pronoun *ejus,* with *facere* or *fieri* is elegantly added to *quoad;* as, Quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus fieri poſſit, *Cic. Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or ſome ſuch word underſtood. Quoad corpus, quoad animam, *for* ſecundum, *or* quod attinet ad corpus *vel*

nimam, as to the body or ſoul, is eſteemed by the beſt gramma-ans not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is uſually joined with the ndic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before; SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMUL TQUE, SIMUL UT, as ſoon as; UBI, when, ſometimes with the nd. and ſometimes with the Subj. as, Antequam dico *or* dicam, *Cic.* imulac perſenſit, Virg. Simul ut videro Curionem, *Cic.* Hæc bi dicta dedit, *Liv.* Ubi ſemel quis pejeraverit, ei credi poſtea on oportet, *Cic.* So NÆ, truly; as, Næ ego homo ſum infelix, *Ter.* Næ tu, ſi id feciſſes, melius famæ conſuluiſſes, *Cic.* But NE, not, ith the Imperative, or more elegantly with the Subjunctive; as, Ne jura, Plaut. Ne poſt conferas culpam in me, Ter. Ne tot an-orum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis diſcrimen, Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote reſem-lance, are joined with the Indicative; Fuit, olim, quaſi ego ſum, nex, *Plaut.* Adverſi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti conſli-unt, *Virg.* Hæc omnia perinde ſunt, ut aguntur, *Cic.* But when ſed ironically, they have the ſubjunctive; as, Quaſi de verbo, on de re laboretur, *Cic.*

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT for *utinam*, I wiſh, take the Subjunctive; , Utinam ea res ei voluptati ſit, *Cic.* O mihi præteritos referat Jupiter annos, *Virg.* Ut illum dii deæque perdant, *Ter.*

6. UT, when or after, takes the indicative; as, Ut diſceſſit, ve-it, &c. ¶ Alſo for *quam*, or *quomodo*, how! as, Ut valet! Ut fal-s animi eſt! Ut ſæpe ſumma ingenia in occulto latent! *Plaut.* Or when it ſimply denotes reſemblance; as, Ut tute es, ita om-es cenſes eſſe, *Plaut.* ¶ In this ſenſe it ſometimes has the ſubj. s, Ut ſementem feceris, ita metes, *Cic.*

7. QUIN, for CUR NON, takes the Indic. as, Quin continetis vo-em indicem ſtultitiæ veſtræ, *Cic.* ¶ For IMO, nay or but, the Ind. r Imperat. as, Quin eſt paratum argentum, quin tu hoc audi, *Ter.* For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the ſubjunct-e; as, Nulla tam facilis res, quin difficilis fiet, quum invitus fa-as, *Ter.* Nemo eſt, quin malit; Facere non poſſum, quin ad te ittam, *I cannot help ſending;* Nihil abeſt, quin ſim miſerrimus, *Cic.*

The GOVERNMENT of ADVERBS.

XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, overn the genitive; as,

Pridie ejus diei,	The day before that day.
Ubique gentium,	Every where.
Satis eſt verborum,	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, Interea, poſtea, in-, tunc; as, Interea loci, *in the mean time;* Poſtea loci, *afterwards;*

rde loci, *then*; tunc temporis, *at that time*. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds, ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubiubi, &c. *Alſo* Eo, huc, huccine, unde, uſquam, nuſquam, longe, ibidem; as, Ubi, quo, quovis, &c. *alſo* uſquam, nuſquam, unde terrarum, *vel* gentium; longe gentium; ibidem loci; eo audaciæ, vecordiæ, miſeriarum, &c. to that pitch of boldneſs, madneſs, miſery, &c. 3. Of quantity, Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, ſatis, parum, minimè; as, Abundè gloriæ, affatim divitiarum, largiter auri, ſatis loquentiæ, ſapientiæ parum eſt illi *vel* habet. He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minime gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *inſtar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the ſake of virtue, Cic. *Inſtar montis*, like a mountain, Virg. But theſe are properly nouns.

Obſ. 1. Theſe adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, becauſe they imply in themſelves the force of a ſubſtantive; as, Potentiæ gloriæque abundè adeptus, *the ſame with* abundantiam gloriæ: *or* res, locus, *or* negotium and a prepoſition, may be underſtood; as, Interea loci, *i. e.* inter ea negotia loci; Ubi terrarum, *for* in quo loco terrarum.

Obſ. 2. *We uſually ſay* pridie, poſtridie ejus diei, *ſeldom* diem; *but* pridie, poſtridie, Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollinares, natalem ejus, abſolutionem ejus, &c. rarely Kalendarum, &c.

Obſ. 3. *En* and *ecce* are conſtrued either with the nominative or accuſative; as,

En hoſtis, *or* hoſtem; Ecce miſerum hominem, *Cic.* Sometimes a dative is added; as, Ecce tibi Strato, *Ter.* Ecce duas (ſcil. aras) tibi, Daphni, *Virg.* In like manner is conſtrued *hem* put for *ecce*; as, Hem tibi Davum, *Ter.* But in all theſe examples ſome verb muſt be underſtood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the caſe of their primitives; as,

Omnium optimè loquitur,	He ſpeaks the beſt of all.
Convenienter naturæ,	Agreeably to nature.
Venit obviam ei,	He came to meet him.
Proximè caſtris or *caſtra*,	Next the camp.

The CONSTRUCTION of PREPOSITIONS.

1. *PREPOSITIONS governing the Accuſative.*

An aſtra, *to the ſtars*; religari ad aſſerem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, ſolvam, &c. *at* or *on*; ad portam, oſtium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem, Tiberim, *near, at*; ad templa ſupplicatio, *in*; ad ſummum, *at moſt*; ad ſummam, *on the whole*, Cic.; ad ultimum, extremum, *at laſt, finally*; ad *v.* in ſpeciem, *to appearance*; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad ſeveritatem,

for, with respect to, Cic.; ad vivum, *sc.* corpus *to the quick*; ad judicem agere, *before*; nihil ad Cæsarem, *in comparison of*; numero ad duodecim, *to the number of*; omnes ad unum, *to a man*; ad hoc, *besides*; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man*; herbæ ad lunam messæ, *by the light of*, Virg. ad tempus venit, *at*; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*, Cic.; ad decem annos, *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*, Cic. nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day*, Liv.; ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at*; ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; ad libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no less*; ad hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and hearing these things*, Liv.

AD seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo millia cæsa sunt; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, *about*, Liv.

APUD forum, *at*; apud me cænabis, *at my house*; apud senatum, judices *v.* aliquem dicere, *before*; apud majores nostros, *among*; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Est mihi fides *vel* valeo, apud illum, *I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, Ter.

ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before*.

ADVERSUS, *v.* -um; CONTRA hostes, *against*; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *towards*; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against*, Plin.

CIS *vel* CITRA flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, Sen.

CIRCUM & CIRCA regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin. ERGA amicos, *towards*. EXTRA muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, fortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA tectum, *below the roof*.

INTER fratres, *among*; inter & super cœnam, *during, in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*, Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*, Cic. Inter diem; *whence*, interdiu, *in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi non norimus nos inter nos, *Ter.*

INTRA privatos parietes, intra paucos annos, *within*; intra famam est, *less than report*, Quinct.

JUXTA macellum, *near the shambles*.

OB lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriam *for* de industria, *on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, *or* quem penes, *in the power of*; Penes te es? *Are you in your senses?* Hor.

PER agros, *through*; per vim, per scelus, *by*; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reason of*.

PONE caput, *behind*.

POST hoc tempus, *after*; post tergum, *behind*; post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, *since the world began.*

PRÆTER te nemo, *no body, besides or except*; præter casam fugere, *beyond*; præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond*; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, *above*; præter ripam ire, *along, near*; præter oculos, *before*, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of*; propter aquæ rivum, *near, hard by*, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta et virtutes tuas, *according to*, Ter. secundum littus, secundum aurem vulneratus est, *near to*; in actione secundum vocem vultus plurimum valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to*; Prætor secundum me decrevit, sententiam dedit, *for, in my favour*, Cic.

SECUS viam, *by, along.* SUPRA terram, *above.*

TRANS mare, *over, beyond.* ULTRA oceanum, *beyond.*

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE & VERSUS; as, Circiter meridiem, *about mid-day*; prope muros, *near the walls*; usque Puteolos, Tharsam usque, *as far as*; Orientem versus, *towards the east.* But in these *ad* is understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæs. In Italiam versus, Cic.

2. *PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.*

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by or from*; a puero, *vel* pueris, a puericia, incunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. *from a child, ever since childhood*; ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper*; a manu, *sc.* servus, *an amanuensis or clerk*; ad manum, *a waiting man*; a pedibus, *a footman*; a latere principis, *an attendant. So* a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. *a secretary, accountant, &c.*; fores a nobis, *for* nostræ. Injuria ab illo, *for* illius, Ter. a cœna, *after*; Secundus tertius à Romulo; ictus ab latere, *on or in*; a senatu stare, *for, in defence of*; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia et militibus imparatus, *as to, with respect to*, Cic. Est calor a sole; omissiores ab re, *too careless about money*; a villa mercenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causa, *without*; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, i. e. si te non esses, nisi tu esses, *but for you, had it not been for you*, Ter. Absque *is chiefly used by comic writers*; sine, *by orators.*

CLAM patre & patrem, *without the knowledge of.*

CORAM omnibus, *before, in presence of.*

CUM exercitu, *with*; testis mecum est annulus, *in my possession*, Ter. cum prima luce, *at break of day*; cum imperio esse, *in*; cum primis, in primis, *in the first place*; cum metu dicere, cum lætitia vivere,

cum cura, &c. Cic. *We say*, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; *rarely* cum me, cum te, &c. *and* quocum *or* cum quo, quibuscum & cum quibus.

De lana caprina rixantur, *about, concerning*; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of*; de loco superiore, *from*; de die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; de integro, *anew, afresh*; de *v.* ex improviso, *unexpectedly*; de *v.* ex industria, *on purpose*; de meo, *at my expence*; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain*, Ter. de *v.* ex compacto agere, *by agreement*; de transverso, *crosswise, athwart*; de *v.* ex ejus sententia, consilio, *according to*; qua *v.* hac de causa, *for*; homo de plebe; templum de marmore, *of*; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech*; de Pilio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; De ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, Ex ædibus, *from, out of*; e contrario, *v.* contraria parte, *on the contrary*; e regione, *over against*; e republica, e re alicujus, *for the good of*; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta properantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from after*; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately*; poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback*; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall. diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day*; ex ordine, *in order*; magna ex parte, *for the most part*; ex supervacuo, *superfluously*; ex tua dignitate *v.* virtute, ex decreto senatus, e natura, *according to*; *so* vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex *v.* de more, ad *v.* in morem alicujus: Ex animo, *from the heart*; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of*; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage*; ex eo die, *since*; ex amicis certis certissimus, *of or among*; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, Nescio quo, puerum natum, *by*, Id.

Pro gloria certare, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*, Sal. Hoc est pro me, Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before*; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of*; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte *v.* facultate, *to one's ability or power*; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, Cic. *in comparison of, considering*; pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, *for, as*; *so* pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concesso, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso relictus est, Cic.

Præ se pugionem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because of*;

illum præ me contempsi, *in comparison of: So the adv.* præut; *as*, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of.*

SINE labore, *without*; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sede, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUS, *up to the hilt.* *Tenus* is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing. as, *Cumarum tenus*, as far as *Cumæ*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, *up to.* We also find, Corcyræ tenus, et ostiis tenus, Liv. Colchis tenus, Flor. Pectoribus tenus, Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added PROCUL, as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, Procul a patria, Virg. Procul ab ostentatione, Quinct. Culpa est procul a me, Ter.

3. *PREPOSITIONS governing the Accus. and Abl.*

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

IN urbem ire, *into*; amor in patriam, in te benignus, *towards*; in lucem, *until day*; in eam sententiam, *to that purpose, on that head*; in rem tuam est, *for your advantage*; in utramque partem disputare, *on both sides, for and against*; litura in nomen, *on*, Cic. potestas in filium, *over*; in aliquem dicere, *against*; mirum in modum, *after*; in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, *on*; in os laudare, *to, before*; in *v.* inter patres lectus, *into the number of*; in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. *among*; crescit in dies, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, *every day*; in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, *against*; in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow*; Est in diem, *will happen some time after*, Ter. Inducias in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. *for*; Ternis assibus in pedem, *v.* in singulos pedes, transegit, *He bargained for three shillings a foot*, or *for every foot*; *So* in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In medimna singula, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, Cic.

IN portu navigo, in tempore, *in*; esse in potestate, *v.* in potestatem, honore *vel* honorem, mente *v.* mentem; in manu *v.* manibus esse; habere, tenere, *in one's power, on hand*; in amicis, *among*; in oculis, *before*: Occisus est in provinciam, *for* in provincia, Sall. In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, *for* puer or pueri.

a boy or *boys*, &c. Hoc in tempore, Nep. In loco fratris diligere, *for* ut fratrem, Ter.

SUB terras ibit imago, ſub aſpectum cadit, *under*; ſub ipſum funus, *near, juſt before*, Hor. ſub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, veſperam, brumam, *i. e.* incipiente luce, &c. *at the dawn of day*, &c.; ſub idem tempus, *about*; ſub eas literas recitatæ ſunt tuæ, ſub feſtos dies, *after*, Cic.

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. *under*; ſub urbe, *near*, Ter. ſub ea conditione, &c. *em*, *on* or *with*.

SUPER Numidiam, *above, beyond*; ſuper ripas, *upon*; ſuper hæc; ſuper morbum etiam fames affixit, *beſides*, Liv. ſuper arbore, fronde ſuper viridi, *upon*; ſuper hac re ſcribere, *his acceſſa ſuper*, *concerning*; alii ſuper alios trucidantur, Liv. Super cœnam, ſuper vinum et epulas, *for* inter, *during*, Curt. Nec ſuper ipſe ſuâ molitur laude laborem, *for*, SUBTER terram *vel* terra, *under*. [Virg.

Obſ. 1. When prepoſitions do not govern a caſe, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are, Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, poſt, propter, ſecus, ſubter, ſuper, ſupra, ultra. But in moſt of theſe the caſe ſeems to be implied in the ſenſe; as, Longo poſt tempore venit, ſc. poſt id tempus. Adverſus, juxta, propter, ſecus, ſecundum, & clam, are by ſome thought to be always adverbs, having a prepoſition underſtood when they govern a caſe. So other adverbs alſo are conſtrued with the acc. or abl. as, *Intus cellam*, for *intra*, Liv. *Intus templo divum*, ſc. *in*, Virg. *Simul his* ſc. *cum*, Hor.

Obſ. 2. A and E are only put before conſonants; AB and EX uſually before vowels, and ſometimes alſo before conſonants; as,

A patre, e regione: ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte: *abs* before *q* and *t*; as, abs te, abs quivis homine, Ter. Some phraſes are uſed only with *e*; as, e longinquo, e regione, e veſtigio, e re mea eſt, &c. Some only with *ex*; as, Ex compacto, ex tempore, magna ex parte, &c.

Obſ. 3. Prepoſitions are often underſtood; as, Devenere locos, ſcil. ad; It portis, ſc. ex, Virg. Nunc id prodeo, ſcil. ob *vel* propter, Ter. Maria aſpera juro, ſcil. per, Virg. Ut ſe loco movere non poſſent, ſcil. e *vel* de, Cæſ. Vina promens dolio, ſcil. ex, Hor. Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet, ſc. de, Ter. And ſo in Engliſh, *Shew me the book; Get me ſome paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We ſometimes find the word to which the prepoſition refers, ſuppreſſed; as, Circum Concordiæ, ſc. ædem, Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church*; Campum Stellatem diviſit extra ſortem ad viginti millibus civium, *i. e.* civium millibus ad viginti milia, Suet. But this is

moſt frequently the caſe after prepoſitions in compoſition; thus, Emittere ſervum, ſcil. manu, Plaut. Evomere virus, ſcil. ore, Cic. Educere copias, ſcil. caſtris, Cæſ.

XLV. A prepoſition in compoſition often governs the ſame caſe, as when it ſtands by itſelf; as,

Adeamus ſcholam,	Let us go to the ſchool.
Exeamus ſcholâ,	Let us go out of the ſchool.

Obſ. 1. The prepoſition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, Adire ad ſcholam; Exire e ſchola; Adgredi aliquid, *or* ad aliquid; ingredi orationem *vel* in orationem; inducere animum, et in animum; evadere undis et ex undis; decedere de ſuo jure, decedere viâ *vel* de via; expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe, et ex urbe. Some do not repeat the prepoſition; as, Affari, alloqui, allatrare aliquem, *not* ad aliquem. So, Alluere urbem; accolere flumen; circumvenire aliquem; præterire injuriam; abdicare ſe magiſtratu, (*alſo* abdicare magiſtratum;) tranſducere exercitum fluvium, &c. Others are only conſtrued with the prepoſition; as, Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in morbum, avocare a ſtudiis, avertere ab incepto, &c.

Some admit other prepoſitions; as, Abire, demigrare loco; *or* a, de, ex loco; abſtrahere aliquem a, de, *vel* e conſpectu; Deſiſtere ſententia, a *v.* de ſententia; Excidere manibus, de *v.* e manibus, &c.

Obſ. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accuſative; as,

Egredi urbe *or* urbem, ſc. extra; egredi extra vallum, Nep. Evadere inſidiis *or* inſidias. Patrios excedere muros, Lucan. Scelerata excedere terrâ, Virg. Elabi ex manibus; pugnam, vincula, Tac.

Obſ. 3. This rule does not take place, unleſs when the prepoſition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itſelf; as, Alloquor patrem, *or* loquor ad patrem.

3. The CONSTRUCTION of INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections, *O, heu,* and *proh,* are conſtrued with the nominative, accuſative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone!* O good man! *Heu me miſerum!* Ah wretched me!

So, O vir fortis atque amicus! *Ter.* Heu vanitas humana! *Plin.* Heu miſerande puer! *Virg.* O præclarum cuſtodem ovium (aut *animal*) lupum! *Cic.*

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! Ah me! *Væ vobis!* Wo to you!

Obſ. 1. *Heu* and *obe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heu Syre,* Ter. *Obe libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro, ah, vah, heu,* h

generally either the accusative or vocative; as, Proh hominum fidem! *Ter.* Proh Sancte Jupiter! *Cic.* Hem astutias! *Ter.*

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely: thus, Heu me miserum! *stands for* Heu! quam me miserum sentio! Hei mihi! *for* Hei! malum est mihi! Proh dolor! *for* Proh! quantus est dolor! and so in other examples.

The CONSTRUCTION of CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing.* 2. The *Cause, Manner,* and *Instrument.* 3. *Place.* 4. *Measure* and *Distance.* 5. *Time.*

1. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus,	I bought a book for two shillings.
Constitit talento,	It cost a talent.

So Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale, *&c.* Nocet empta dolore voluptas, *Her.* Spem pretio non emam, *Ter.* Plurimi auro veneunt honores, *Ovid.*

¶ These genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris,* A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; *as,* parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, are often used without the substantive; as, Permagno constitit, scil. pretio, *Cic.* We also say, Emi carè, cariùs, carissimè; bene, meliùs, optimè; malè, pejùs, viliùs, vilissimè; Valde carè æstimas: Emit domum prope dimidio cariùs, quam æstimabat, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret, *Liv.*

2. MANNER and CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,	I am pale for fear.
Fecit suo more,	He did it after his own way.
Scribo calamo,	I write with a pen.

So Ardet dolore; pallescere culpâ; æstuare dubitatione; gestire voluptate *vel* secundis rebus; Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiâ: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater; *hence* Rex Dei gratiâ. Paritur pax bello, *Nep.* Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatu: Nullo sono convertitur annus, *Juv.* Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede, *Ovid.* Percutere securi, defendere saxis, configere sagittis, &c.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, De more matrum locuta est, *Virg.* Magno cum metu; Hac de causa: Præ mærore, formidine, &c. But hardly ever before the instrument; as, Vulnerare aliquem gladio, *not* cum gladio; unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, Trajectus ab ense, *Ovid.*

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, Obsedit curiam cum gladiis: Ingressus est cum gladio, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ABJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum, *Liv.* Floruit acumine ingenii, *Cic.* Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobilis, *&c.* Æger pedibus. When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, Templum de marmore, *seldom* marmoris; Poculum ex auro factum, *Cic.*

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by* or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless it be a noun of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions

1. *The Place* WHERE.

L. When the question is made by *Ubi?* Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Romæ,	He lived at Rome.
Mortuus est Londini,	He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension, or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

Habitat Carthagine,	He dwells at Carthage.
Studuit Parisiis,	He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, Natus est Romæ urbis celebris: but either Romæ in celebri urbe, *or* in Romæ celebri urbe, *or* in Roma celebri urbe, or sometimes Romæ celebri urbe. In like manner, we usually say, Habitat in urbe Carthagine, with the preposition. We likewise find Habitat Carthagini, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi?*

2. *The Place* WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo?* Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam,	He came to Rome.
Profectus est Athenas.	He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, Carthagini nuncios mittam, *Horat.*

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome, *Liv.* Messanam literas dedit, *Cic.*

3. *The Place* WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde?* Whence? or *Qua?* By *or* through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,	He departed from Corinth.
Laodicea iter faciebat,	He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, Per Thebas iter fecit, *Nep.*

Domus and *Rus*.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet domi,	He stays at home.
Domum revertitur,	He returns home.
Domo arcessitus sum,	I am called from home.
Vivit rure, or more frequently *ruri,*	He lives in the country.
Rediit rure,	He is returned from the country.
Abiit rus,	He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi, militiæ,* and *belli,* are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli,* At home and abroad. *Jacet humi,* He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, In domo paterna, *not* domi paternæ; *So* Ad domum paternam: Ex domo paternâ. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, Meus, tuus, suus, noster, regius, vester, *and* alienus; as, Domi meæ vixit, *Cic.* Regiam domum comportant, *Sall.*

Obs. 3. When *Domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, Deprehensus est domi, domo, *or* in domo Cæsaris.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by	
Ubi?	Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.
Quo?	Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, *or,* ad urbem, &c.
Unde?	Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.
Qua?	Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, In Roma *for* Romæ; ad Romam, ex Roma, &c.

Peto always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petivit Ægyptum,* He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition; as, Pompeius Cypri visus est, *Cæs.* Cretæ jussit considere Apollo, *Virg.* Venit Sardiniam, *Cic.* Romæ, Numidiæque facinora ejus memorat, *Sall.*

4. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus eſt decem pedes altus, *The wall is ten feet high.*
Urbs diſtat triginta millia, *or* triginta millibus paſſuum, } *The city is thirty miles diſt*
Iter, *or* itinere unius dici, *One day's journey.*

Obſ. 1. The accuſative or ablative of meaſure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimenſion; as, *Longus, latus, craſſus, profundus,* and *altus: Patet, porrigitur, eminet,* &c. The names of meaſure are *pes, cubitus, ulna, paſſus, digitus,* an inch; *palmus,* a ſpan, an handbreadth, &c. The accuſative or ablative of diſtance is uſed only after verbs which expreſs motion or diſtance; as, *Eo, curro, abſum, diſto,* &c. The accuſative is governed by *ad* or *per* underſtood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab.*

Obſ. 2. When we expreſs the meaſure of more things than one, we commonly uſe the diſtributive number; as, *Muri ſunt denos pedes alti,* and ſometimes *denûm pedum,* for *denorum,* in the genitive, *ad menſuram* being underſtood. But the genitive is only uſed to expreſs the meaſure of things in the plural number.

Obſ. 3. When we expreſs the diſtance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly uſe the ablative; or the accuſative with the prepoſition *ad;* as, Sex millibus paſſuum ab urbe conſedit, *or,* ad ſex millia paſſuum, *Cæſ.* Ad quintum milliarium *v.* milliare conſedit, *Cic.* Ad quintum lapidem, *Nep.*

Obſ. 4. The exceſs or difference of meaſure and diſtance is put in the ablative; as,

Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice ſupra eſt, *Virg.* Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliaribus ſuperat.

5. TIME.

LVI. When the queſtion is made by *Quando?* When? time is put in the ablative; as,

Venit horâ tertiâ, He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the queſtion is made by *Quamdiu?* How long? time is put in the accuſative or ablative, but oftener in the accuſative; as,

Manſit paucos dies, He ſtaid a few days.
Sex menſibus abfuit, He was away ſix months.

* *Or thus,* Time *when* is put in the ablative, time *how long* is put in the accuſative.

Obſ. 1. When we ſpeak of any preciſe time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expreſſed, it is put for the moſt part in the accuſative.

Obſ. 2. All the circumſtances of time are often expreſſed with

prepoſition; as, In præſentia, *or* in præſenti, ſcil. tempore; in ad præſens; Per decem annos; Surgunt de nocte; Ad horam eſtinatam; Intra annum; Per idem tempus; ad Kalendas ſoluturos ait, *Suet.* The prepoſition *ad* or *circa* is ſometimes ſuppreſſed, as in theſe expreſſions, *hoc, illud, id, iſtuc, ætatis, temporis, horæ, &c.* for *hac ætate, hoc tempore, &c.* And *ante* or ſome other word; as, Annos natus unum et viginti, ſc. ante. Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt, ſc. tot annis, quot *vel* quotquot ſunt, *Cic.* Prope diem, ſc. ad, *ſoon;* Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum eſt, expugnatum, ſc. poſt eos dies, *Cæſ.* Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas literas, *for* die tertio ante, *Cic.* Qui dies futurus eſſet inante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris, *Id.* Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob. *Liv.* Lacedæmonii ſeptingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt, ſc. quam per, *Cic.* We find, Primum ſtipendium meruit annorum decem ſeptemque, ſc. Atticus; *for* ſeptemdecim annos natus, *ſeventeen years old,* Nep.

Obſ. 3. The adverb *ABHINC* which is commonly uſed with reſpect to paſt time, is joined with the accuſative or ablative without a prepoſition, as, *factum eſt abhinc biennio* or *biennium,* It was done two years ago. So likewiſe are *poſt* and *ante;* as, *Paucos poſt annos:* but here, *ea* or *id* may be underſtood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound ſentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound ſentence is made up of two or more ſimple ſentences or *phraſes,* and is commonly called a *Period.*

The parts of which a compound ſentence conſiſts, are called *Members* or *Clauſes.*

In every compound ſentence there are either ſeveral ſubjects, and one attribute, or ſeveral attributes, and one ſubject, or both ſeveral ſubjects and ſeveral attributes: That is, there are either ſeveral nominatives applied to the ſame verb, or ſeveral verbs applied to the ſame nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute muſt have a ſubject. There muſt therefore be in every ſentence or period as many propoſitions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who *loveth religion* and *practiſeth virtue.*

The CONSTRUCTION of RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative, *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Singular.		*Plural.*
Vir qui,	The man who.	*Viri qui.*
Fœmina quæ,	The woman who.	*Fœminæ quæ.*
Negotium quod,	The thing which.	*Negotia quæ.*
Ego qui scribo,	I who write.	*Nos qui scribimus.*
Tu qui scribis,	Thou who writeſt.	*Vos qui scribitis.*
Vir qui scribit,	The man who writes.	*Viri qui scribunt.*
Mulier quæ scribit,	The woman who writes.	*Mulieres quæ scribunt.*
Animal quod currit,	The animal which runs.	*Animalia quæ currunt.*
Vir quem vidi,	The man whom I ſaw.	*Viri quos vidi.*
Mulier quam vidi,	The woman whom I ſaw.	*Mulieres quas vidi.*
Animal quod vidi,	The animal which I ſaw.	*Animalia quæ vidi.*
Vir cui paret,	The man whom he obeys.	*Viri quibus paret.*
Vir cui eſt ſimilis,	The man to whom he is like.	*Viri quibus eſt ſimilis.*
Vir a quo,	The man by whom.	*Viri a quibus.*
Mulier ad quam,	The woman to whom.	*Mulieres ad quas.*
Vir cujus opus eſt,	The man whoſe work it is.	*Viri quorum opus eſt.*
Vir quem miſeror, cujus miſereor vel *miſereſco, cujus me miſeret,* vel *cuja intereſt, &c.*	The man whom I pity. whoſe intereſt it is, &c.	

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that caſe, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, uſe to govern.

Thus the conſtruction of the relative requires an acquaintance with moſt of the foregoing rules of ſyntax, and may ſerve as an exerciſe on all of them.

Obſ. 1. The relative muſt always have an antecedent expreſſed or underſtood, and therefore may be conſidered as an adjective placed betwixt two caſes of the ſame ſubſtantive, of which the one is always expreſſed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui *(vir)* legit; vir, quem *(virum)* amo: Sometimes the latter; as, Quam quiſque nôrit artem, in hac *(arte)* ſe exerceat, *Cic.* Eunuchum, quem dediſti nobis, quas turbas dedit, *Ter.* ſc. Eunuchus. Sometimes both caſes are expreſſed; as, Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire poſſent, *Cæſ.* Sometimes,

though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat, *for* sunt homines, quos, &c. *Hor.*

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed betwixt two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos, *Ovid.* Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur, *Sall.* Animal, quem vocamus hominem, *Cic.* Cogito id quod res est, *Ter.* If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolori, scil. Pompeium se affligere, *Cic.* Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, Scelus qui, *for* sceleſtus, *Ter.* Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant, scil. negotia, *Sall.* Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, *quod* ego in aliqua parte amicitiæ puto, facit ut te moneam, scil. negotium, *Ter.*

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio*, scarcely *facit*. In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make*, or *maketh*. But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence: thus it is proper to say, "I am the man, who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expence of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you, who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love:" it should be, "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum, *Ter.* Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur; *i. e.* pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem &c. *Liv.* Si tempus est illum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt, scil. tempora, *Cic.*

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, Urbs antiqua fuit: Tyrii tenuere coloni, scil. quam or eam, *Virg.* Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied

ed in a different caſe; as, Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadant, *for* quique in priore pugna non adfuerant, *Sall.* In Engliſh the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it muſt be expreſſed; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote*; *The man I love*, to wit, *whom*. But this omiſſion of the relative is generally improper, particularly in ſerious diſcourſe.

Obſ. 6. The caſe of the relative ſometimes ſeems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum conſuêſti, *for* quæ conſuêſti agere, or quorum aliquid agere conſuêſti, *Cic.* But ſuch examples rarely occur.

Obſ. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is*, and *idem*, in their conſtruction, reſemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper uſe of theſe pronouns in Engliſh, the meaning of ſentences is often rendered obſcure.

Obſ. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus, &c.* are alſo ſometimes conſtrued like relatives; as, Facies eſt, qualem decet eſſe ſororum, *Ovid.* But theſe have commonly other adjectives, either expreſſed or underſtood, which anſwer to them; as, Tanta eſt multitudo, quantam urbs capere poteſt: and are often applied to different ſubſtantives; as, Quales ſunt cives, talis eſt civitas, *Cic.*

Obſ. 9. The Latin relative often cannot be tranſlated literally into Engliſh, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita eſſet*, When that was ſo; not, Which when it was ſo, becauſe then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accuſative of the relative in Latin muſt be rendered by the nominative in Engliſh; as, *Quem dicunt me eſſe?* Who do they ſay that I am? *not* whom. *Quem dicunt adventare?* Who do they ſay is coming?

Obſ. 10. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is uſually conſtrued with the ſubjunctive mode, unleſs when the meaning of the verb is expreſſed poſitively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: Audire cupio, quæ legiſti, I want to hear, what you have read.

To the conſtruction of the Relative may be ſubjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The anſwer is commonly put in the ſame caſe with the queſtion; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, *ſc.* vocor. Quid quæris? Librum, *ſc.* quæro.

Quotâ horâ veniſti? Sextâ. Sometimes the conſtruction is varied; as, Cujus eſt liber? Meus, *non* mei: Quanti emptus eſt? Decem aſſibus. Damnatuſne es furti? Imo alio crimine. Often the anſwer is made by other parts of ſpeech than nouns; as, Quid agitur? Statur, ſc. a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Neſcio: Aiunt Petrum feciſſe. Quomodo vales? Bene, male. Scripſiſtine? Scripſi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidiſti? Non vidi, non, minime, &c. Chæreæ tuam veſtem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et eâ eſt indutus? Factum, *Ter.* Moſt of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of queſtions and anſwers.

The CONSTRUCTION of CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* and ſome others, couple like caſes and modes; as,

Honora patrem et matrem, Honour father and mother.
Nec legit nec ſcribit, He neither reads nor writes.

Obſ. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and diſjunctive conjunctions; as likewiſe, *quam, niſi, præterquam, an;* and alſo adverbs of likeneſs, as, *ceu, tanquam, quaſi, ut, &c.* as,

Nullum præmium a vobis poſtulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam, *Cic.* Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra ſequitur, *Id.*

Obſ. 2. Theſe conjunctions properly connect the different members of a ſentence together, and are hardly ever applied to ſingle words, unleſs when ſome other word is underſtood. Hence if the conſtruction of the ſentence be varied, different caſes and modes may be coupled together; as,

Intereſt mea et reipublicæ; Conſtitit aſſe et pluris; Sive es Romæ, ſive in Epiro; Decius cum devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruebat, *Cic.* Vir magni ingenii ſummâque induſtria; Neque per vim, neque inſidiis, *Sall.* Tecum habita, et nôris, quam ſit tibi curta ſupellex, *Perſ.*

Obſ. 3. When *et, aut, vel, ſive,* or *nec,* are joined to different members of the ſame ſentence, without connecting it particularly to any former ſentence, the firſt *et* is rendered in Engliſh by *both* or *likewiſe*; *aut* or *vel,* by *either*; the firſt *ſive,* by *whether*; and the firſt *nec,* by *neither*; as,

Et legit, et ſcribit; *ſo* tum legit, tum ſcribit; *or* cum legit, tum ſcribit, *He both reads and writes;* Sive legit, ſive ſcribit, *Whether he reads or writes:* Jacere quâ vera, quâ falſa; Increpare quâ conſules ipſos, quâ exercitum, *to upbraid both the conſuls and the army,* Liv.

LIX. Two or more ſubſtantives ſingular coupled by a conjunction, (as *et, ac, atque,* &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui ſunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, Cic. In English the person speaking usually puts himself last: thus, You and I read; Cicero and I are well: but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first: thus, *Ego et tu legimus.*

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui: but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. Cic. Where *Athenæ & urbs* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in substantives; as, Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque [illegible] legati missi, *i. e.* the king and queen, Liv.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt, Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, *Cic.* Sociis et rege recepto, *Virg.* *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault, and you; or *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt; or nihil hic deest nisi carmina. Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum; Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi, *Liv.* This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, *Virg.* The conjunction is frequently understood; as, Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant, *Ter.* Freus, oculi, multum sæpe mentiuntur, *Cic.*

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the moſt part joined to the ſubjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut diſcam,	I read that I may learn.
Utinam ſaperes,	I wiſh you were wiſe.

Obſ. 1. All Interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the ſubjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, Quantus, qualis, quótus, quotuplex, uter; Pronouns, as, *quis*, et *cujas*; Adverbs, as, Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorſum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, quî, ut, quam, quantopĕre; or Conjunctions, as, *ne*, *an*, *anne*, *annon*: Thus, *Quis eſt?* Who is it? *Neſcio quis ſit*; I do not know who it is. An venturus eſt? Neſcio, dubito, an venturus ſit. Viden ut alta ſtet nive candidum Soracte, *Hor.* But theſe words are ſometimes joined with the indicative; as, Scio quid ago, *Plaut.* Haud ſcio an amat, *Ter.* Vide avaritia quid facit, *Id.* Vides quam turpe eſt, *Cic.*

¶ In like manner the Relative QUI in a continued diſcourſe; as, Nihil eſt quod Deus efficere non poſſit. Quis eſt, qui utilia fugiat? *Cic.* Or when joined with QUIPPE or UTPOTE; Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui ſequeretur, *&c. Sall.* But theſe are ſometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. So Eſt qui, ſunt qui, eſt quando *v.* ubi, *&c.* are joined with the indicative or ſubjunctive.

NOTE, Haud ſcio an recte dixerim, *is the ſame with* dico, affirmo, *Cic.*

Obſ. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is ſignified, conjunctions and indefinites are uſually conſtrued with the ſubjunctive; but when a more abſolute or determinate ſenſe is expreſſed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it*; *Although he was rich*, *&c.*

Obſ. 3. ETSI, TAMETSI, and TAMENETSI, QUANQUAM, in the beginning of a ſentence, have the indicative; but elſewhere, they alſo take the ſubjunctive: ETIAMSI and QUAMVIS commonly have the ſubjunctive, and UT, although, always has it; as, Ut quæras, non reperies, *Cic.* QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM, are uſually conſtrued with the indicative; SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM; QUOD, and QUIA, ſometimes with the indicative, and ſometimes with the ſubjunctive. DUM, for *dummŏdo*, provided, has always the ſubjunctive; as, Oderint, dum me-

tuant, *Cic.* And QUIPPE, for *nam*, always the indic.; as, Quippe vetor fatis.

Obſ. 4. Some conjunctions have their correſpondent conjunctions belonging to them; ſo that, in the following member of the ſentence, the latter anſwers to the former: thus, when *etſi*, *tametſi*, or *quamvis*, although, are uſed in the former member of a ſentence, *tamen*, yet, or nevertheleſs, generally anſwers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam*, — *quam*; *Adeo* or *ita*, — *ut*: in Engliſh, *As*, — *as* or *ſo*; as, *Et ſi ſit liberalis, tamen non eſt profuſus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuſe. So *prius* or *ante*, — *quam*. In ſome of theſe, however, we find the latter conjunction ſometimes omitted, particularly in Engliſh.

Obſ. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after theſe verbs, Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, cenſeo, ſuadeo, *dicet*, oportet, neceſſe eſt, and the like; and likewiſe after theſe imperatives, Sine, fac *or* facito; as, Ducas volo hodie uxorem; Nolo mentiare; Fac cogites, *Ter.* In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, Cave facias, *Cic.* *Poſt* is alſo ſometimes underſtood; thus, Die octavo, quam creatus erat, *Liv.* 4. 47. ſcil. *poſt*. And ſo in Engliſh, *See you do it*; *I beg you would come to me*, ſc. *that*.

Obſ. 6. *Ut* and *quod* are thus diſtinguiſhed; *ut* denotes the final cauſe, and is commonly uſed with regard to ſomething future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulſive cauſe, and is generally uſed concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut diſcam*, I read that I may learn; *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that *or* becauſe I have read. *Ut* is likewiſe uſed after theſe intenſive words, as they are called, *Adeo*, *ita*, *ſic*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, *&c.*

Obſ. 7. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative ſenſe for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative ſenſe; as, *Timeo ne faciat*, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas, *Ter.* Ut ſis vitalis, metuo, *Hor.* But in ſome few examples they ſeem to have a contrary meaning.

The CONSTRUCTION of COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the abl.; as, *Dulcior melle*, ſweeter than honey. *Præſtantior auro*, better than gold.

Obſ. 1. The ſign of the ablative in Engliſh is *than*. The poſitive with the adverb *magis*, likewiſe governs the ablative; as, Magis dilecta luce, *Virg.*

The ablative is here governed by the prepoſition *præ* underſtood, which is ſometimes expreſſed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative alſo conſtrued with other prepoſitions; as, Immanior ante omnes, *Virg.*

Obſ. 2. The comparative degree may likewiſe be conſtrued with the conjunction *quam*, and then, inſtead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever caſe the ſenſe requires; as,

Dulcior quam mel, ſcil. *eſt*. *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quam ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, ſcil. *ab*.

Obſ. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly ſuppreſſed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

Vulnerantur amplius ſexcenti, *Cæſ.* ſcil. quam. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter.

Quam is ſometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphis clarior quam gratior, *Liv.* Or the prep. *pro* added; as, Prælium atrocius, quam pro numero pugnantium editur, *Liv.*

The comparative is ſometimes joined with theſe ablatives, *opinione*, *ſpe*, *æquo*, *juſto*, *dicto*; as,

Credibili, opinione major, *Cic.* Gravius, æquo, *Sall.* Dicto citius, *Virg.* Majora credibili tulimus, *Liv.* They are often underſtood; as, Liberius vivebat, ſc. juſto, *too freely*, Nepos.

Nihil is ſometimes elegantly uſed for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

Nihil vidi quidquam lætius, *for* neminem, *Ter.* Craſſo nihil perfectius, *Cic.* Aſperius nihil eſt humili cum ſurgit, in altum. *Si* quid nobis laboriosius, *for* quis, &c. *Cic.* We ſay, Inferior patri nulla re, or quam pater. The comparative is ſometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, Magis magiſque, plus pluſque, minus minuſque, carior cariorque; Quotidie plus, indies magis, ſemper candidior candidiorque, *&c.*

Obſ. 4. The relation of equality or ſameneſs is likewiſe expreſſed by conjunctions; as, *Eſt tam doctus quam ego*, He is as learned as I. Animus erga te idem eſt ac fuit. *Ac* and *atque* are ſometimes, though more rarely, uſed after comparatives; as, Nihil eſt magis verum atque hoc, *Ter.*

Obſ. 5. The exceſs or defect of meaſure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the ſign in Engliſh is *by*, expreſſed or underſtood; as,

Eſt decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, *or* by ten inches. *Altero tanto major eſt fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipede minor*, a foot and a half leſs; *Altero tanto, aut ſeſquimajor*, As big again or a half bigger, *Cic.* Ter tanto pejor eſt; Bis tanto amici ſunt inter ſe, quam prius, *Plaut.* *Quinquies tanto amplius, quam quantum is census fuit, civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, *Cic.* To this may be

added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increaſe its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.*; thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they deſire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, alſo joined with ſuperlatives: Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus, *Sall.* Multoque id maximum fuit, *Liv.*

The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Subſtantive and a Participle are put in the ablative, when their caſe depends on no other word; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ, { The ſun riſing, *or* while the ſun riſeth, darkneſs flies away.

Opere peracto, ludemus, { Our work being finiſhed, *or* when our work is finiſhed, we will play.

So, Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus eſt locus; Nihil amicitiâ præſtabilius eſt, exceptâ virtute; Oppreſsâ libertate patriæ, nihil eſt quod ſperemus amplius; Nobilium vitâ victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto, Cic. Parumper ſilentium et quies fuit, nec Etruſcis, niſi cogerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatore arcem Romanam reſpectante, ut ab auguribus, ſimul aves rite admiſiſſent, ex compoſito tolleretur ſignum, Liv.

Obſ. 1. This ablative is called *Abſolute*, becauſe it does not depend upon any other word in the ſentence.

For if the ſubſtantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to ſome following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative abſolute is never uſed, unleſs when different perſons or things are ſpoken of; as, *Milites, hoſtibus victis, redierunt*, The ſoldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hoſtibus victis*, may be rendered in Engliſh ſeveral different ways, according to the meaning of the ſentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. The enemy conquered, or being conquered; 2. When *or* after the enemy is *or* was conquered; 3. By conquering the enemy; 4. Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.

Obſ. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not uſed in the ablative abſolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc conſedit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in caſe with the ſubſtantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative abſolute, like the participles of paſſive verbs; as, Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt; *or* Romani, libertate adepta, floruerunt. But as the participles of common verbs are ſeldom taken in a paſſive ſenſe, we therefore find them rarely uſed in the ablative abſolute.

Obſ. 3. The participle *exiſtente* or *exiſtentibus* is frequently underſtood; as, Cæſare duce, ſcil. exiſtente. His conſulibus, ſcil. exiſtentibus. *Invitâ Minervâ*, ſc. *exiſtente*, againſt the grain; *Craſſa Minervâ*, without learning, Hor. Magiſtrâ ac duce naturâ; vivis fratribus; te hortatore; Cæſare impulſore, &c. Sometimes the ſubſtantive muſt be ſupplied; as, Nondum comperto, quam regionem hoſtes petiſſent, *i. e.* cum nondum compertum eſſet, Liv. Excepto quod non ſimul eſſes, cætera lætus, Hor. In ſuch examples *negotio* muſt be underſtood, or the reſt of the ſentence conſidered as the ſubſtantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb ſupply the place of a ſubſtantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having ſaid farewell, Ovid.

Obſ. 4. We ſometimes find a Subſtantive plural joined with a participle ſingular; as, *Nobis præſente*, Plaut. *Abſente nobis*, Ter. We alſo find the ablative abſolute, when it refers to the ſame perſon with the nominative to the verb; as, *Me duce ab hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, Ov. But examples of this conſtruction very rarely occur.

Obſ. 5. The ablative called abſolute is governed by ſome preпoſition underſtood; as, *a, ab, cum, ſub*, or *in*. We find the prepoſition ſometimes expreſſed; as, Cum diis, juvantibus, Liv. The nominative likewiſe ſeems ſometimes to be uſed abſolutely; as, Pernicioſa libidine pauliſper uſus, infirmitas naturæ accuſatur, Sall. Jug. 1.

Obſ. 6. The ablative abſolute may be rendered ſeveral different ways: thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the ſame with *Cum, dum*, or *quando Superbus regnabat. Opere peracto*, is the ſame with *Poſt opus peractum*, or *Cum opus eſt peractum*. The preſent participle, when uſed in the ablative abſolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obſ. 7. When a ſubſtantive is joined with a participle in Engliſh independently on the reſt of the ſentence, it is expreſſed in the nominative; as, *Ille deſcendente*, He deſcending. But this manner of ſpeech is ſeldom uſed except in poetry.

APPENDIX to SYNTAX.

I. Various Signification and Conſtruction of VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ASPIRARE, ad gloriam et laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to deſire to be admitted*, Cic. equis Achillis, *to wiſh for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amorem dictis, *to infuſe*, Virg.

DESPERARE ſibi, de ſe; ſalutem, ſaluti, de ſalute, *to deſpair of.*

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to ſend as an ambaſſador*; aliquem ſibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, *i. e.* teſtamento relinquere. *N. B.* Publice *legantur* homines; qui inde *legati* dicuntur; privatim *allegantur*; unde *allegati.*

DELEGARE æs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, i. e. in eum transferre, Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus et ei, eum metu, *to eaſe.*

MUTARE locum, ſolum, *to be baniſhed*; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; veſtem, i. e. ſordidam togam induere, Liv. veſtem cum aliquo, Ter.

OBNUNCIARE comitiis *vel* conſilio, i. e. comitia auſpiciis impedire, *to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating theſe words* ALIO DIE; Conſuli *v.* magiſtratui; i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat, Cic.

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promiſe*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; ſententias, *to ſum up the opinions of the ſenators*, Cic.

RENUNCIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; conſulem, *to declare, to name*; vitæ, amicitiam ei, *to give up*; muneri, hoſpitio, *to refuſe*; repudium, *to divorce.*

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to ſeize*; ſe in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*; ſe ad negotium, Plaut. pecuniam alicui *v.* apud aliquem grandi fœnore, *to give at intereſt*, Cic. Occupat facere bellum, tranſire in agrum hoſtium, *begins firſt, anticipates*, Liv.

PRÆOCCUPARE ſaltum, portas Ciliciæ, *to ſeize before hand*, Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former ſentence* or *trial*, Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, et de ea re; id ab eo; ſalutem, et pro ſalute, Cic. legem, *to propoſe*; *hence*, uti rogas, dicere, *to paſs it*: militem ſacramento, *to adminiſter the military oath*: Roget quis? *If any one ſhould aſk.* Comitia rogandis conſulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *ſeldom* legi, *to diſannul a law, to repeal*, or *to change in part*; multam, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from.*

ADROGARE id ſibi, *to claim.*

DEROGARE aliquid legi, v. de lege, *to repeal* or *take away ſome clauſe of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; ſibi, alicui, *to derogate* or *take from.*

EROGARE pecuniam, *to lay out money.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impoſe.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad ſolvendum, *to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to ſubſtitute*; legi, *to add a new clauſe, or to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex cenſu, animum alicujus ex ſuo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hoſtes, *to overcome*; montes, *to paſs*; ſuperat pars cæpti, *ſc.* operis, *remains*; Captæ ſuperavimus urbi, *ſurvived*, Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*; mihi, ſibi, *to reſtrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to ſpare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abſtain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, ſc. in, *to be at eaſe*; philoſophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; ſi vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you be at leiſure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id ſibi et ad ſe, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; ſe in libertatem, *to ſet at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to ſhake hands*, Plaut. jura, *to preſcribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, v. ſe in fugam, in pedes, *to fly*; hoſtes in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavour*; operam philoſophiæ, literis, paleſtræ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to ſeek*, Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his requeſt*, Ter. gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, ſing, fall, &c.* cognitores honeſtos, *to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic. aliquid mutuum v. utendum, *to lend*; pecuniam fœnori, et collocare, *to place at intereſt*; ſe alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum ſuo ingenio, *to think much of*; ſe ad aliquid, *to apply to*; ſe auctoritati ſenatûs, *to yield*; fabulam, ſcripta foras, *to publiſh*; Cic. effectum, *to perform*; ſenatum, *to give a hearing of the ſenate*; actionem, *to grant leave to proſecute*; præcipitem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to beſpeak*, Ter. litem ſecundum aliquem, *to determine a law-ſuit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, *rarely* lethum alicui, *to kill*; aliquid alicui dono v. muneri, *to make a preſent*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuſe, blame, praiſe*; pœnas, *to ſuffer*; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, *to liſt one's ſelf to be a ſoldier*; ſe alicui, *to be familiar with*,

Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*; Id. aures, *to liſten*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to ſpeak*; verba alicui, *to impoſe on, to cheat*; ſe in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to ſacrifice juſtice to intereſt*; ſe turpiter, *to make a ſhabby appearance*; fundum, *vel* domum alicui mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus uſu, Lucr. ſervos in quæſtionem, *to give up ſlaves to be tortured*; primas, ſecundas, &c. (ſc. partes) actioni, *to aſcribe every thing to delivery*, Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow looſe*, Virg. Da mihi *v.* nobis, *tell us*, Cic. Ut res dant ſe, *as matters go*; ſolertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert*, Ter.

Satisdare judicatum ſolvi, *to give ſecurity that what the judge has determined ſhall be paid*, Cic.

Stare contra aliquem; ab, cum, *v.* pro aliquo, *to ſide with, to be of the ſame party*; judicio ejus, *to follow*; in ſententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, *to ſtand to, to make good an agreement*; re judicatâ, *to keep what has been determined*; ſtare *v.* conſtare animo, *to be in his ſenſes*: Non ſtat per me quo minus pecunia ſolvatur, *It is not owing to me that, &c.* multorum ſanguine ea Pœnis victoria ſtetit, *coſt*, Liv. Mihi ſtat alere morbum deſinere, *I am reſolved*, Nep.

Adstare menſæ, *to ſtand by*; ad menſam, in conſpectu.

Constare ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to conſiſt of*; ſecum, *to be conſiſtent with*, Cic. liber conſtitit *v.* ſtetit mihi duobus aſſibus, *coſt me*; non conſtat ei color, *his colour comes and goes*; auri ratio conſtat, *the ſum is right*. Conſtat, imperſ. *It is evident, certain or agreed on*; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

Extare aquis, *to be above*, Ovid. ad memoriam poſteritatis, *to remain*, Cic.

Instare victis, *to preſs on the vanquiſhed*; rectam viam *to be in the right way*; currum Marti, *to make ſpeedily*, Virg.; inſtat factum, *inſiſts that it was done*, Ter.

Obstare ei, *to hinder*.

Præstare multa, *to perform*; alicui, *v.* aliquem virtute, *to excel*; ſilentium ei, *to give*; auxilium, *to grant*, Juv. impenſas, *to defray*; iter tutum, *to procure*; ſe incolumem, *to preſerve*; ſe virum, *i. e.* præbere, exhibere; amorem, *v.* benevolentiam alicui, *to ſhew*; culpam *v.* damnum, *i. e.* in ſe transferre, *to take on one's ſelf*; præſtabo de me; eum facturum, *I will be anſwerable*. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi ſunt, is periculum judicii præſtare debet, qui ſe nexu obligavit, *In recovering*, or *in an action to recover, thoſe things, which are tranſferable, the ſeller ought to take upon himſelf the hazard of a trial*, Cic. *N. B.* Thoſe things were called, Res mancipi, (*contracted for* mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) *the property of which might be*

transferred from one Roman citizen to another, as, houses, lands, slaves, &c.

Præstat, imperf. i. e. *it is better:* Præstò esse alicui, adv. *to be present, to assist*; Libri prostant venales, *the books are exposed to sale.*

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, *to recline near*; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis et ova, *to sit upon*; stratis et super stratæ.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, *v.* inter manus, *to have*, gratiam et gratum, *to have a grateful sense of a favour*; judicium, *to hold a trial*; honorem ei, *to honour*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter.: fidem alicui, *to trust* or *believe*; curam de, *v.* pro eo; rationem alicujus, *to pay regard to*, *to allow one to stand candidate for an office*; rationem *v.* rem cum aliquo, *to have business with*; satis, *to be satisfied*; orationem, concionem ad populum, *to make a speech*; aliquem odio, in odium, *to hate*; ludibrio, *to mock*; id religioni, *to have a scruple about it*: Hoc, habere aliquid-quæstui, honori, præsidæ, voluptati, &c. *sc.* sibi; se bene *v.* graviter, *to be well or ill*; se parce et duriter, *to live*, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum *v.* pro certo, *to know for certain*; aliquem contemptui, despicatui, -um, *v.* in despicatum, *to despise*; excusatum, *to excuse*; fusque deque, *to scorn, to slight*; Ut res se habet, *stands, is*; rebus ita se habentibus, *in this state of affairs*; Hæc habeo, *v.* habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of dismissal.*

ADHIBERE diligentiam; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, *to use*; in convivium *v.* consilium, *to admit*; remedium valeri, curationem morbo, *to apply*; vinum ægrotis, *to give*; aures verbibus, *to hear with taste*; cultum et preces diis, *to offer*, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, *to cause trouble.*

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass*; aliquem salvere, *to wish one health*; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, *divorced*, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, et de hac re. Doctus, *adj.* utriusque linguæ; Latinis et Græcis literis; Latine et Græce; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ, Plin. cæcis sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor.

VIDERE rem *v.* de re; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of*, Ter. plus, *to be more wise*, Cic. De hac re videris, *consider, be answerable for*, Cic. Videor videre, *methinks I see*; visus sum audire, *methought I heard*; mihi visus est dicere, *he seemed*; Quid tibi videtur? *What think you?* Si tibi videtur, *if you please*; videtur fecisse, &c.

IRROGARE honorem ei, *v.* honori ejus; ei vel cum, *to envy.*

PROVIDERE et proſpicere id, *to foreſee*; ei, *to provide for*; in poſterum; rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride*; toga bene ſedet, *fits*; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*, Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbalem, *to ſit by*, Sall. Aſſidet inſano, *is near* or *like to*, Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, *to diſagree*.

INSIDERE equo, et in equo, *to ſit upon*; locum, Liv. in animo, memoriâ, *to be fixed*.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, *to command*, Cic. exercitum, Italiam, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugnæ; loqui, *to forbear, to give over*.

PENDERE promiſſis, ab v. ex aliquo, *to depend*; de, ex, ab et in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, *threatens*.

SPONDERE et deſpondere filiam alicui, *to betroth*.

DESPONDERE domum alicujus ſibi, *to be ſure of*, Cic. animo et -is, *to promiſe, to hope*; animum et -os, *to deſpair*, Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to anſwer*; votis ejus, *to ſatisfy his wiſhes*; ad ſpem.

SUADERE ei pacem, v. de pace; legem.

DOLERE caſum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a ſole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one*; lex valet, *is in force*; quid verbum valeat, non video, *ſignifies*; valet decem talenta, *or oſtener* talentis, *is worth*; vale, *vel* valeas, *farewell*; *or ironically, away with you*.

EMINERE aliqua re *vel* in aliqua re, inter omnes; ſuper cætera, Liv. ſuper utrumque, Hor. *to be eminent, to excel*; ex aqua, *vel* aquam, ſuper undas, *to be above*. Imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten*; in occaſionem, exitio alicujus, *to ſeek, to watch for*.

TENERE promiſſum; ſe domi, oppido, caſtris, *ſc.* in, *to keep*; modum, ordinem, *to obſerve*; rem, dicta, lectionem, *to underſtand, to remember*; linguam, *but not* ſuam, ſilentium, ſe in ſilentio, *to be ſilent*; ora, *to keep the countenance fixed*; ſecundum locum imperii, *to hold*, Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy*, Cic. cauſam, *to gain*; mare, *to be maſter of*; terram, portum, *to reach*; riſum, lachrymas, *to reſtrain*; ſe ab accuſando, quin accuſet, Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows*; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by*; leges tenent eum, *bind*; teneri in manifeſto furto, *to be ſeized*; tenet fama, *prevails*.

ABSTINERE maledictis, v. a, *to abſtain*; publico, *to live retired*, Tacit. animum a ſcelere, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from*; jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorouſly*, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me*; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper

to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for* meus, fratris est, *belongs to*; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinent, *reach.*

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consulatûs: *to bear the character*; assensionem, *v.* se ab assensu, *to withhold assent*; rem in noctem, *to defer.*

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect*, Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits*, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERERE laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier*; fustuarium, *to be beaten to death.*

HÆRERE lateri; tergis *v.* in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in viscеribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt*; Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*, Cic.

ADHÆRERE et adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inhærere rei, et in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp*; bella, *to raise*; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe*; e senatu, *to degrade a senator*; risum *vel* jocum alicui, *to cause laughter*; stomachum ei, *to trouble*, Cic.

FAVETE ore, *v.* linguis, *sc.* mihi, *attend in silence*, or *abstain from words of bad omen.*

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, *v.* ab aliquo, *to guard against, to avoid*; alicui, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer doth his client*; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo *v.* per aliquem de re aliqua, *to get security on*; mihi prædibus et chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond*; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, *sc.* ne, *see you don't do it*; mihi cavendum, *v.* mea cautio est, *I must take care.*

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, Suet. *to wink*; in hominum scelеribus, *to take no notice of*, Cic.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumine, *to make*; divortium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem, *to shew*, Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, *to pretend*, Cic. æs alienum, *v.* contrahere, conflare, *to contract debt*; animos, *to encourage*; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, *to lose*; naufragium, *to suffer*; sumptum, *to spend*; gratiam alicui, *to oblige*; gratiam delicti, *to pardon a fault*; gratiam legis, *to dispense with*; justa *vel* funus alicui, *to perform one's funeral rites*; rem, *to make an estate*; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; fœdus, *v.* inire, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. *to make a league*; moram alicui, *to delay*; verba, *to speak*; audientiam sibi, Cic. negotium, et facessere, *to trouble*; aliquid mi-

to pass over; aliquem missum, *to dismiss* or *excuse*; ad aliquid, *ready* alicui, *to be fit* or *useful*; ratum, *to ratify*; planum, *to explain*; palam suis, *to make known*, Nep. stipendium pedibus v. equo, et merere, *to serve in the army*; sacra, sacrificium, v. rem divinam, *to sacrifice*; reum, *to impeach*; fabulam, carmen, versus, &c. *to write a play*, &c. copiam consilii ei, *to offer advice*; fidem, *to procure* or *give credit*; periculum, *to make trial*; potestatem sui, *to expose himself*, Nep. aliquem loquentem v. loqui, *to suppose* or *represent*, Cic. piraticam, sc. rem, *to be a pirate*; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. *to be an usurer, a physician*, &c. versuram, *to contract a new debt, to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest*, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo, *to side with*; contra v. adversus, *to oppose*; nomen v. nomina, *to borrow money*, and also, *to settle accounts*, i. e. rationes acceptarum sc. pecuniarum et expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in litura, *to write it where something was before*, Cic. pedem, *to sail with a fair wind*, Virg. Pax ita esse, *suppose it is so*; obvius fieri alicui, *to meet*; ne longum, v. longa faciam, ut breve faciam, *not to be tedious*; equus non facit, *will not move*, Cic.

Afficere aliquem laude, honore, præmio, et ignominiâ, pœnâ, morte, leto, &c. *to praise, honour*, &c. *to disgrace, punish*, &c. Affectus ætate, morbo, *weakened*.

Conficere bellum, *to finish*; orationes, *to compose*, Nep. cibum, *to chew*; argentum, *to raise, to get*; *also to spend*, Cic.; cum aliquo de re, *to conclude a bargain*; exercitus hostium, *to destroy*, Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant, i. e. emeriti, *had served out their time*, Cic.

Deficere animo, *to faint*; ab aliquo, *to revolt*; tempus deficit mihi v. me, *fails*: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. *to be deprived of*.

Inficere se vitro, *to stain*: Infectus, part. *stained*; infectus, adj. *not done*. Inficior, -atus, -ari, *to deny*.

Officere alicui, *to hinder* or *hurt*; Diogeni aprieanti, *to stand betwixt him and the sun*; auribus, visui, *to stop* or *obstruct*; Umbra terræ soli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

Præficere aliquem exercitui, *to set over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philosophia, et progressus facere, *to make progress*.

Reficere muros, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, lassos, &c, jumenta, *to refresh, to recover*.

Sufficere laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear*; arma v. vires alicui, *to afford*; Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, *was substituted*, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos suffecti sanguine et igne, *sc.* secundum, *having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

Satisfacere alicui, in v. de aliqua re, *to satisfy*; fidei, promisso, *to perform*.

Jacere aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*;

fundamenta, et ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to caſt*.

Adjicere, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum ſtudiis, *to apply*.

Conjicere ſe in pedes, *v.* fugam, *to fly*; cætera, *to conjecture*.

Injicere manus ei, *to lay on*; ſpem, ardorem, ſuſpicionem, pavorem, alicui, *to inſpire*; admirationem ſui cultus ipſo aſpectu, *Nep.*

Objicere ſe hoſtibus, in *v.* ad omnes caſus, *to oppoſe* or *expoſe*; crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

Rejicere tela in hoſtes, *to throw back*; judices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad ſenatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

Subjicere ova gallinæ, to ſet an hen; ſe imperio alicujus, to ſubmit; teſtamenta, to forge; teſtes, to ſuborn; partes *v.* ſpecies generibus, ex quibus emanant, to put or claſs under; aliquid ei, to ſuggeſt; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare; odio civium, to expoſe; bona Pomperii *v.* fortunas haſtæ, *vel* voci et ſub voce præconis, to expoſe to public ſale, *Cic.* ſub haſta venire, to be ſold, *Liv.*

Trajicere copias *v.* exercitum, fluvium, Helleſpontum, *v.* trans fluvium, to tranſport; Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus eſt, paſſed or ſailed over. Trajectus ferro, pierced.

Capere conjecturam, conſilium, dolorem, fugam, ſpecimen, ſpem, ſedem, &c. to gueſs, conſult, grieve, fly, eſſay, hope, ſit, &c. augurium, *v.* auſpicium, et agere, to take an omen; exemplum de aliquo; locum caſtris; terram, to alight; inſulam, ſumma, *ſc.* loca, to reach; ſpolia ex nobilitate, to gain, *Sall.* de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magiſtratum, to receive or enjoy; virginem veſtalem, to chuſe; amentiam, ſpiritus, ſuperbiam alicujus, to bear, to contain: aliquem conſilio, perfidiâ, to catch; nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, the houſe hardly contains us: Altero oculo capitur, blind of one eye; capitur locis, he is delighted with, Virg.

Accipere pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, to receive; Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, two copies of the ſame letter, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, to hear; id in bonam partem, to take in good part, to underſtand in a good ſenſe; omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorſum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, *v.* rude donari, to be diſcharged as a gladiator; aliquem bene *v.* male, to treat; eum male acceptum in Mediam hiematum coegit redire, roughly handled, Nep. rogationem, to approve the bill; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, to allow to ſtand candidate; omen, to eſteem good; ſatisfactionem *v.* excuſationem, Cæſ. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, popular.

Concipere verba juramenti, *to preſcribe the form of an oath*; con-

ceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to me*; aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE cum hospitio, *to entertain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem paterâ, *to keep* or *gather*; notis, et scribere, *to write in short hand*; motus futuros, *to perceive*; Hos homines excipio, *I except*; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, *succeeded*; sic excepit regia Juno, *replied*, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, *to begin*. Percipere fructus, *to reap*.

PRÆCIPERE futura, *to foresee*; guadia, spem victoriæ, *to anticipate*; pecuniam mutuam, *to take before the time*, Cæs. lac, *to dry up*, Virg. alicui id, v. de ea re, *to order*; artem ei, *to teach*.

RECIPERE aliquid, *to receive*; urbem, *to recover*; cum tectis, *to entertain*; se v. pedem, *to retreat*; se domum, *to return*; se, mentem, animum, *to come to one's self again, to recover spirits*; in se, *to take charge*; alicui, *to promise*; se ad frugem, *to amend*; senem sessum, *to give a seat to*, Cic.

RAPERE *vel* trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense*; in jus, *to bring before a judge*; partes inter se, *to share*, Liv.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vestibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off*; fidem, sacramentum, *to break*; mentem, *to change*, Virg. hostem castris, *to beat from*.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum: cæteros, Ter. spumas, *to drive* or *toss*, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, *to suffer*; æs alienum, *to pay*, Curt. culpam suam *vel* alterius, morte, sanguine, *to expatiate, to atone* or *suffer for*.

ELUERE amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually*, Cic.

STATUERE exemplum in hominem, *vel* -ne, *to make one a public example*; aliquem capite in terram, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, *to settle*; agmen paulisper, *to make to stop* or *halt*, Sall. in digitis, *to count on one's fingers*, Cic. urbem, *to build*, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, *appointed, resolved*, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, *makes, constitutes*, Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, *a good constitution*, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, *to forsake*; spem, *to deceive*; propositum, *to give over*, Ovid. deos pactâ mercede, *to defraud*, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem secundum hæredem filio, *to appoint*, Cic. collegium fabrorum, *to institute, to found*, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis, *to instruct*; naves, *to build*, Cæs. sermonem, *to enter upon*, Id. animum ad cogitandum, *to settle*; antequam pro Murœna dicere instituo, *I begin*, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, qua actione illum uti oporteat, *to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use*, Cic. tempus ei, *to determine*.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem suis, *to restore*; oppida vicosque, *to repair*; aciem inclinatam, *to rally*; prælium, *to renew*, Liv.

Substituere aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, *to ſubſtitute* or *put in the place of*, Cic.

STRUERE epulas, *to prepare*; inſidias, mendacium, *to contrive*; odium, crimen alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to raiſe againſt*.

SCRIBERE ſua manu, bene, velociter, epiſtolam alicui, *v.* ad aliquem; bellum, *v.* de bello; milites, *to enliſt*; ſupplementum militibus, *to recruit them*; hæredem, *to make one his heir*; dicam ei, *to raiſe an action againſt one*; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus ſuis ſcribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus ſcribendis, Liv.

Ascribere aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v.* -e, *to make free.*

Describere aliquem, *to deſcribe and not to name*; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to diſtribute, to divide*; vectigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare; jura, i. e. dare *v.* conſtituere; cenſores binos in ſingulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.

Inscribere literas alicui, *to direct a letter*; librum, *to entitle* or *name*; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's houſe to let*, Ter.

Proscribere bona alicujus, ædes ſuas, auctionem, *to publiſh to be ſold, to ſet to ſale*; aliquem, *to baniſh, to outlaw.*

Rescribere alicujus literis *v.* ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, *to write an anſwer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to ſet foot ſoldiers on horſeback*, Cæſ.

Subscribere exemplum literarum, *to write below*; cauſæ, *to join* or *take part in an accuſation*; Cæſaris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

DICERE aliquid, *v.* de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad *v.* apud aliquem; in aliquem, *againſt*; ad aliquid, *in anſwer to*; ſententiam, *to give an opinion*; jus, *to adminiſter juſtice, to pronounce ſentence*; mulctam ei, *to amerce* or *fine*; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people*; prodicere, *to put it off*; cauſam, *to plead*; teſtimonium, *to give evidence*; non idem *loqui* eſt ac dicere, *to harangue*, Cic. ſacramento, *feldom* -um, *to take the military oath.*

Addicere aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to ſell*; ſervituti, *v.* in ſervitutem, *to ſentence* or *adjudge to bondage*; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor*; ſe alicui, *to devote himſelf to one's ſervice*: aves non addixerunt, *v.* abdixerunt, *the birds did not give a favourable omen*; pretio addictam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

Condicere operam alicui, *to promiſe aſſiſtance*; cenam alicui, *v.* ad cenam, *to propoſe ſupping with one without invitation.*

Edicere alicui, *to order*; delectum, *to appoint a levy*; prædam militibus, *to promiſe by an edict*; juſtitium, diem comitiis, *vel* comitia conſulibus creandis, *to appoint.*

Indicere bellum, juſtitium, *to proclaim war*; legem ſibi, *to appoint*, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, *to ſummon*, Liv. indicare, *to ſhew*; Indictus, an adj. *not ſaid*; cauſâ indictâ, *v.* non cognitâ con-

demnari, to be condemned without being heard; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, *not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui aliquid, v. aliqua re, feminis usum purpuræ, *to forbid* or *debar from*; ei aqua & igne, v. aquam et ignem, *to banish*; male rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdici solet, Cic. interdici non poterat socero gener, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hac re, *to foretell, to forewarn*.

DUCERE in carcerem, *to lead*; exercitum, *to command*; spiritum, animam, vitam, *to breathe, to live*; fossam, murum, *to make* or *draw*; bellum, *to prolong*, also *to carry on*, Virg. ætatem, diem, *to spend*; uxorem, *to take a wife*; in jus, *to summon before a judge*; aliquem, et vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. *to make a statue*; genus, nomen ab v. ex aliquo, *to derive*; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id ei laudi, laudem, v. in laudem, *esteem the first, to reckon on it a praise to him*; in conscientiam, *to impute to a consciousness of guilt*; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimæ, sc. usuræ, *vel* fœnus centesimis, *to compute interest at one for the hundred a month*; or *at 12 per cent per annum*; binis centesimis fœnerari, *to take 24 per cent per annum*, Cic. ducere longa voce in fœtum, to draw out, Virg. ordines, *to be a centurion*, Liv. ilia, *to pant like a broken winded horse*, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep. secum, to draw in; habenas, to straiten the reins.

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, equos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price: Conducit hoc tuæ laudi, in v. ad rem, is of advantage.

DEDUCERE naves, to launch; classem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. eum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, to draw; florem Italiæ, to lead out, Cic. filium, to educate, *often* educare; in altra, to extol, Hor.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, v. in animum, to persuade himself; scutis pellibus, to cover, Cæs. soleas pedibus, v. in pedes, to put on; colorem picturæ, to varnish, Plin. nomini, to cancel or rase, to rub out.

OBDUCERE exercitum, to lead against; callum dolori, to blunt it; sepulchrum sentibus, to cover.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, v. alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance; in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile; Vallis reducta, retired or low.

PRODUCERE testes, to bring out; funus, to attend; sermonem

in noctem, to prolong, to continue; rem in hiemem, to defer; ſervos vendendos, to bring to market.

SUBDUCERE ſe a cuſtodibus, *to ſteal away*; naves, *to draw up on ſhore*; cibum ei et deducere, *to take from*; ſummam, rationes, *to reckon, to caſt up accounts.*

PARCERE ſibi, labori, *to ſpare*, &c. a cædibus, *to forbear*; aurum natis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, *v.* re aliqua, in *v.* ad hoc, *to be accuſtomed*; mentem pluribus et aſſuefacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. *to accuſtom. So* inſuefco rei *v.* re; inſuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, *to vote, to decree: hence* plebiſcitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, *to aſſume*; ſocios ſibi, ad ſocietatem ſceleris, *to aſſociate*; ritus peregrinos, *to adopt.*

CONSCISCERE mortem *v.* necem ſibi, *to kill one's ſelf*; fugam ſibi, *to flee*, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, *v.* apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, *or without* ex: Dediſcere, *to forget what he hath learned*; Ediſcere, *to get by heart.*

DESCENDERE de palatio, præſidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accuſandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourſe to*, Cic.

LUDERE aleâ, *v.* -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to loſe one's labour.*

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo; Illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock.*

EVADERE inſidias, -is, *v.* ex, *to eſcape*; in muros, *to mount*: Hæc quorſum evadant, neſcio, *to what they will turn out*: Clarus evaſit, *became.*

CEDERE multa multis de ſuo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence* ceſſio bonorum; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, *v.* locum, *to give place*; vitâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes.*

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad *v.* in oppidum, *to approach*, ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, ſententiæ, *v.* ad ſententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the queſtorſhip*, or *the firſt public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendſhip of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, Ter. Robur acceſſit ætati, Cic. Animi acceſſere hoſti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona acceſſerant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc accedit, quod, *is added.*

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely* alicui, *to excel.*

CONCEDERE ei aliquid et de aliquo; paullum de ſuo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiber-

na, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitâ, *to die*; in ſententiam ejus, *to come into one's meaſures*; in conditiones, *to agree to*, Liv.

DISCEDERE tranſverſum, et latum unguem, *v.* digitum a re, *to depart in the leaſt.*

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative againſt, to oppoſe a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become ſurety*; Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia *v.* inter nos, *there is*, &c.

SUCCEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to ſucceed*; muro, *v.* murum; ad urbem; ſub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come up to.*

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, et litem perdere, *to loſe one's cauſe, to be caſt*; in *v.* ſub ſenſum, oculos, poteſtatem, &c. in morbum, et incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quaſi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, *v.* ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus *v.* ad aures *to come to*; alicui, caſu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te iſtud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to ſtretch*; inſidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay ſnares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, curſum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cœlum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, *ſc.* tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*; Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries*, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hoſtium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's ſelf*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to aſk earneſtly*; inter ſe; amori, poet. *for* cum amore, *to ſtrive*; cauſas, *ſc.* inter ſe, *to compare*, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, et alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to underſtand*; rem pluribus et luculentioribus verbis, *to expreſs*; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, *to gain*; rem fictam, *to diſcover.*

INTENDERE animum rei, ad *v.* in rem, *to apply*: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, *to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem *v.* litem alicui *vel* in aliquem, alſo impingere, *to raiſe a law-ſuit againſt one*; telum ei, *v.* in eum, *to ſhoot at*; manum *v.* digitum in aliquid, *to point at*; aliquo, *ſc.* ire, *to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required*, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, *v.* rem velo, *to cover, to veil.*

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay*; pœnas, *to ſuffer*; id parvi, *to value it little.*

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, *v.* ex arbore, *to hang*; expectatione, *v.* ſuſpenſum detinere, *to keep in ſuſpenſe*; ædificium, *to arch a houſe*; naſo adunco, *to ſneer at*, Horat.

ABDERE *ſc.* literis, in literas, *to hide or ſhut one's ſelf among books*; ſe domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in ſilvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, *to build;* fructus, *to lay up;* in carcerem, *to imprison*, carmen, *to compoſe;* lumina, *to cloſe*, Ovid. Jura, *to eſtabliſh;* terrâ, ſepulchro, in ſepulchro, *to bury.*

DEDERE ſe alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, *to ſurrender;* Deditus præceptori, et ſtudiis, *fond of;* vino epuliſque, *engaged in*, Nep. deditâ operâ, *on purpoſe.*

EDERE librum, *to publiſh;* et in lucem; ovum, *to lay;* ſonos, cantus, riſus, gemitus, queſtus, hinnitum, pugnam, ſtragem, *to ſound, ſing, &c.* munus gladiatorium, *to exhibit a ſhew of gladiators;* nomen, *to mention;* fœtus, *to bring forth;* extremum ſpiritum, *to die;* exempla cruciatus in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture.*

OBDERE peſſulum foribus, *to bolt the door.*

PRODERE arcem hoſtibus, *to betray;* aliquid poſteris, *v.* memoriæ, *to hand down;* genus ab aliquo, *to derive;* flaminem, interregem, *to appoint;* aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*, Ter.

REDDERE animum, ſe ſibi, *to revive;* animam *v.* vitam, *to die;* Latine, verbum verbo, *to tranſlate;* matrem, i. e. referre, *to reſemble;* epiſtolam alicui, *to deliver.*

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to ſpur;* ſpiritus alicui, *to encourage.*

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe;* aliquid alicui, *to truſt;* pecuniam ei per ſyngrapham, *to lend on bond or bill;* rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo ſi, &c. *I ſuppoſe*, Cic.

JUNGERE ſe cum aliquo, alicui, et ad aliquem; dextram dextræ; equos currui; amnem ponte, *to make a bridge.*

ADJUNGERE acceſſionem ædibus, *to build an addition to one's houſe;* animum ad ſtudia, *to apply.*

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, enſem, *to draw;* frondes, *to lop off;* glandes, baccas, *to beat down;* rem, *to waſte one's fortune*, Hor. littus, *to touch, to bruſh*, or *graze upon*, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head.*

ATTINGERE Britanniam navibus, *to reach;* reges, res ſummas, *to mention*, Nep. Aliquem cognatione, affinitate, *to be related to;* forum, *to reach manhood*, Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns.*

FINGERE orationem, *to poliſh;* oratorem, *to form;* ſe ad arbitrium alterius, *to adapt:* Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out;* hoſtes, *to rout.*

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce;* ærarium, *to ſpend;* odium, i. e. dimittere, *to drop;* gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere; omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell.*

FRANGERE nucem, *to break;* navem, *to ſuffer ſhipwreck;* fœdus, fidem, *to violate;* ſententiam ejus, *to refute*, Cic. hoſtem, *to ſubdue.*

AGERE gratias, *to give thanks;* vitam, *to live;* prædas, *to plunder;* fabulam, *to act a play;* triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, *to*

umph; nugas, *to trifle*; ambages, *to beat about the buſh*; ſtationem, cuſtodiam urbis, *to be on guard*; rimas, *to chink, to leak*; cauſam, *to plead*; de re, *to ſpeak*; radices, *to take root*; cuniculos, *to undermine*; undam, *to raiſe a ſteam*; animam, *to be at the laſt gaſp*; alias res, *to be inattentive*; feſtum diem, nataſem, &c. *to keep, to obſerve*; actum, *v.* rem actam, *to labour in vain*; cenſum, et habere, *to make a review of the people, their eſtates, &c.* forum *to hold a court to try cauſes*; lege in aliquem, et cum aliquo, *to go to law with one*; *hence* actor, *a proſecutor*; in hereditatem, *to claim*; cum populo, *to treat with, to lay before*; decimum agit annum, *he is ten years old*; id agitur, *that is the queſtion*; libertas agitur, *v.* de libertate, *is at ſtake*; actum eſt de libertate, *is loſt*; actum eſt, ilicet, *all is over*; actum eſt de pace, *was treated about*; cum illo bene actum eſt, *he has been lucky or well uſed*; hoc age, *mind what you are about.*

ADIGERE milites ſacramento, ad *v.* in jusjurandum, in ſua verba, per jusjurandum, *to force to enliſt*; arbitrum, i. e. agere *v.* cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, *to force to ſubmit to an arbitration*, Cic.

COGERE copias, *to bring together*; ſenatum, *to aſſemble*; in ſenatum, *ſc.* minis, pignoribus captis, &c. *to force to attend*; agmen, *to rally, to bring up*; lac, *to curdle*; jus civile diffuſum et diſſipatum, in certa genera cogere, *to digeſt, to arrange.*

EXIGERE foras, to drive out, to divorce; aliquid ab aliquo, to require; ſarta tecta, *ſc.* et, *i. e.* ſarta et tecta, ut ſint bene reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good reparation, Cic. ſupplicium de aliquo, to inflict; ſua nomina, to demand or call in one's debts; ævum, annos, to ſpend; aliquid ad normam, to try or examine; columnam ad perpendiculum, to apply the plummet; to ſee if it be ſtraight; monumentum to finiſh, Hor. tempus et modum, to ſettle; Virg. comœdiam, to diſapprove, to hiſs off, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, to bring back; pecuniam ex bonis venditis, to raiſe money; hoſtes ſub imperium, to reduce.

LEGERE oram, littus, to coaſt along; vela, to furl the ſails; halitum, to catch one's breath; milites, to enliſt; aliquem in ſenatum, to chooſe; ſacra, to ſteal, to commit ſacrilege, Hor.

TRAHERE obſidionem, bellum, to prolong; purpuras, to ſpin; aliquid in religionem, to ſcruple; navem remulco, to tow.

DETRAHERE aliquem, to draw down; alicui, *v.* de aliquo, de fama, to detract from, to leſſen one's fame; aliquid alicui, to take by force; laudem, *v.* de laudibus; novem partes multæ, to take from the fine, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, to ſpin out, to ſpend; certamen, bellum, judicium, to prolong.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invectus curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot*; invehi in portum ex alto, *to enter*; in aliquem, *to inveigh againſt*; provehi longius, *to proceed too far.*

CONSULERE eum, *to aſk his advice*; ei, *to conſult for his good*; de ſalute ſua, gravius in aliquem, *to paſs a ſevere ſentence againſt*; in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego conſulor, *my advice is aſked*; mihi conſulitur, *my good is conſulted*; mihi conſultum ac proviſum eſt, *for* a me, *I have taken care*, Cic.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to divorce*; annulum v. equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring* or *horſe given him by the public, to degrade.*

DIRIMERE litem, controverſiam, *to determine.*

EXIMERE aliquem ſervitio, noxæ, e vinculis, a culpa, de numero proſcriptorum, obſidione, *to free*; de dolio, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waſte in ſpeaking.* INTERIMERE ſe, *to kill.*

REDIMERE captivos, *to ranſom*; pecuaria de cenſoribus, *to take* or *farm the public paſtures.*

APPELLERE claſſe in Italiam, vel claſſem, *to land on*; ſe aliquo, Ter. ad villam noſtram navis appelletur, Cic. animum ad philoſophiam, *to apply.*

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely* eum: excellere aliis, ſuper, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, *to excel.*

TOLLERE animos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, et laudes ejus in aſtra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de, *vel* e medio, *to kill.*

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex v. de eo, *to take*; pœnas, ſupplicium de aliquo, *to puniſh*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam virilem, *to put on the dreſs of a man*; ſibi inimicitias, *to get ill will*; operam in re, *vel* in rem inſumere, *to beſtow pains*; ſumo tantum, *vel* hoc mihi, *I take this upon me.*

PREMERE caſeum, to make cheeſe; vocem, to be ſilent; dolorem corde, to conceal; veſtigia ejus, to follow; littus, to come near; pollicem, to ſave a gladiator; librum in nonum annum, to delay publiſhing, Hor.

EXPRIMERE ſuccum, to preſs out; riſum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, to force from; effigiem, to draw to the life; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. to tranſlate word for word.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint.*

REPRIMERE ſe, et reprendere v. retinere, to check.

PONERE ſpem in homine v. re, et habere; caſtra, to pitch; vitem, to plant; vitam, to die; ova, to lay; inſidias alicui; panem convivis, *not* ante; perſonam amici, to lay aſide the character of a friend; præmia, to propoſe; pocula, to ſtake or lay; ſtudium.

tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, to employ, to beſtow; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, to reckon: ferocia corda, to lay aſide; aliquem in gratiam *v.* gratia, i. e. efficere gratioſum apud alterum, Cic.: ventos, to calm; hominem coloribus, ſaxo, to paint, engrave, Hor. pecuniam, to lay out at intereſt. Venti poſuere, are huſh'd, Virg. Pone eſſe victum eum, Ter. Poſitum ſit, ſuppoſe, grant, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. to compoſe; lites, to ſettle; bellum, to finiſh by treaty; parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare; manus manibus, to join, Virg.

DEPONERE *v.* ponere togam prætextam, to lay aſide the dreſs of a boy; imperium et demittere, to lay down a command.

EXPONERE rem, to ſet forth or explain; frumentum, to expoſe to ſale, Cic. pueros, fœtus, to leave to periſh, Liv. exercitum, ſc. in terram, to land.

IMPONERE onus alicui *v.* in aliquem; aliquem in equum, to ſet upon; perſonam *v.* partes duriores ei, to lay a taſk or duty on one; alicui, to impoſe on, to deceive, Nep. honorem ei, to confer; vadimonium ei, to force to give bail, Nep. manum ſummam, *v.* extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, to finiſh; pontem flumini, to make a bridge, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, to inſert, Nep.

OPPONERE ſe periculis et ad pericula, to expoſe; pignori, to pledge; manum fronti, ante oculos, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid ſibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, to propoſe, to ſet before; edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publice legenda affigere; congiarium, to promiſe a largeſs, a gift of corn or money.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, to ſet a hen; teſtamentum, *v.* ſubjicere, to forge.

CANERE aliquem, to praiſe; ſigna, claſſicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, to ſound an alarm; receptui, *rarely* -um, to ſound a retreat; tibiâ, to play on the pipe; ad tibiam, to ſing to it; palinodiam, to utter a recantation.

STERNERE lectos, to ſpread or cover the couches; equos, to harneſs; viam, to pave; æquora, to calm, Virg.

CARPERE agmen, to cut off the rear; ſomnos, quietem, to ſleep; viam, iter, to go, Virg. opera alterius, to cenſure; labores, virtutes, to diminiſh or obſcure, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, to violate; vocem *v.* ſilentium, to ſpeak, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, caſtris, &c. ſe portis, to break out; ſtomachum in aliquem, to vent paſſion; nubem, Virg.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam ſibi, to ſeek or gain, Cic. ſermonem, to beat about for converſation, Ter. rem mercaturis facien-

dis, to make a fortune by merchandiſe; ex aliquo; et in aliquem de re aliqua per tormenta; to put to the rack; in dominum de ſervo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.

ANQUIRERE aliquid, to ſearch after; aliquem capitis, v. -te, to accuſe or try for a capital crime.

GERERE res, to perform; negotium malè, to manage; conſulatum, to bear, to manage; ſe bene vel male, to behave; morem ei, vel morigerari, to humour; civem, ſe pro cive, perſonam alicujus, to paſs for, to bear the character of; inimicitias vel ſimultatem cum aliquo, to be at enmity or variance with.

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, to inveigh againſt.

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, to ſuggeſt, to hint; ſumptus his rebus, to ſupply or afford; Horatium Bruto, to chuſe in place of, to put after, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, to raiſe, to ſpread accuſations.

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hoſtibus, inter ſe, to engage.

ASSERERE aliquid, to affirm; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, to free; in ſervitutem, to reduce; divinam majeſtatem, to claim.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, rarely eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. to aſk; urbem Romam, murum, to go to, to make for; aliquem ſagittâ, lapide, to aim at; conſulatum; pœnas ab aliquo, et repetere, to puniſh.

COMPETERE animo, to be in one's ſenſes; in eum competit actio, an action lies againſt him, Cic.

REPETERE bona lege, v. proſequi lite, to recover by law; caſtra, to return to; aliquid memoriâ, to call to mind; alte, to trace from the beginning. Mihi nihil ſuppetit, multa ſuppetunt, I have; ſi vita ſuppetet, If life ſhall remain, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in ſuffragia, to ſend the people to vote; aulæum, mappam, to drop the curtain; talos, to throw the dice; ſenatum, to diſmiſs; timorem, to lay aſide; in acta, to regiſter, to record; ſanguinem, v. emittere, to let blood; noxam, to forgive; ſigna timoris, to ſhew; vocem, to ſpeak; habenas, v. remittere, to ſlacken; manu, et emittere, to free a ſlave; filium emancipare, to free a ſon from the power of his father; ſub jugum, to make to paſs under the yoke; inferias manibus diis, to ſacrifice to the infernal gods; rem, v. de re, to omit; mitto rem, I ſay nothing of fortune, Ter. in poſſeſſionem bonorum, to give the poſſeſſion of the debtor's effects; miſit orare, ut venirem; *i. e.* aliquem ad orandum, Ter.

AMITTERE litem, v. cauſam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aſpectum, to loſe, Cic.

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, to admit; equum, et permittere, to gallop; delictum in ſe, to commit a fault; aves non admiſerunt, Liv.

COMMITTERE facinus, to commit; ſe alicui, v. in fidem alicujus, to entruſt; prælium, to engage; exercitum pugnæ, rem in caſum ancipitis eventûs prælii, to riſk a battle, Liv. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter ſe, to ſet at variance, or by the ears; rem eo, to bring to that paſs; gladiatores, pugiles Græcos cum Latinis, to match or pair; committere, ut, to cauſe; incommoda ſua legibus et judiciis, to ſeek redreſs by law.

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiſerunt, H. S. quingenis in ſingulos apud M. Catonem depoſitis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra feciſſet, ab eo condemnaretur, made a compromiſe or agreement, &c.

DIMITTERE exercitum, to diſband; uxorem, et repudiare, nuntium v. repudium ad eam remittere, to divorce.

PROMITTERE id ei, to promiſe; capillum, barbam, to let grow, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, to allow; ſe in fidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hoſtem; rem ſuffragiis populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vexandis conſulibus, to give up, to employ, Liv.

REMITTERE aliquem, to eaſe; calces, to throw back; ex pecunia, de ſupplicio, tributo, &c. to abate; debitum, iras alicui, to give up, to forgive; juſtitium, to diſcontinue.

SUBMITTERE faſces populo, to lower; ſe v. animum, to ſubmit, to ſtumble; percuſſores alicui, to ſuborn aſſaſſins.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. to paſs over.

VERTERE in fugam, to put to flight; terga, to fly; ab imo, to overthrow; ſolum, to go into baniſhment; id ei vitio, v. crimini, et in crimen, to blame; in ſuperbiam, to impute; Platonem, Latinè Græca, Græca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, to tranſlate; pollicem, to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb; terram, to plough; crateram, to empty, Virg. Stilum, to correct, Horat. Salus vel cauſa in eo vertitur, depends; fortuna verteret, Liv. Annus vertens, a whole year, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, proſper.

ANIMADVERTERE id, to obſerve; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. to puniſh.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, to bring up to, Virg. oras, to arrive at; aures, mentes, animum v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, to attend to; in aliquem, *oftener* animadvertere, to puniſh.

ANTEVERTERE ei, to come before; damnationem veneno, to prevent; rem rei, to prefer, Plaut.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, et aliquem pecuniâ, to embezzle, to cheat; candelabrum, to ſteal, to pilfer; promiſſum et receptum, *ſc.* Dolobellæ conſulatum, intervertit, ad ſeque tranſtulit, treacherouſly withheld, Cic.

PEÆVERTERE, et -ti, dep. ventos curſu, to outſtrip; deſiderium plebis, to prevent; metum ſupplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, to put before, ld.

SISTERE vadimonium; ſe in judicio, to appear in court at one's trial; nec ſiſti poſſe, nor could the ſtate be ſaved, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, to ſtand by; ad foreſ; contra, ſuper eum.

CONSISTERE in digitos, to ſtand on tiptoe; in anchoris, ad anchoram, to ride at anchor; frigore, to be frozen, Ovid. Spes in velis conſiſtebat, depended on; virtus in actione conſiſtit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, to ſtand upon; veſtigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in ſe aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in dolos, negotium, Plaut. to inſiſt upon, to urge.

OBSISTERE ei, to ſtop, to oppoſe.

RESISTERE ei, to reſiſt.

SUBSISTERE, to ſtand ſtill; ſumptui, to bear.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, to pay; verſurâ to pay debt by borrowing from another, Ter. Fidem to break a promiſe, or according to others, to perform, Ter. And IV. I. 29. litem æſtimatam, to pay the fine impoſed on him, Nep. Votum, to diſcharge; obſidionem urbis, *v.* urbem obſidione, to raiſe a ſiege; navem, e portu, to ſet ſail; epiſtolam, *v.* reſignare, to break open; aliquem legibus et legum vinculis, to free from; ſolvitur in ſomnos, Virg. Oratio ſoluta, *i. e.* libera, numeris non aſtricta et devincta, proſe.

DISSOLVERE ſocietatem, to break.

RESOLVERE vocem, *v.* ora, to break ſilence, Virg. jura, to violate; vectigal, to take off taxes, Tacit. In pulverem, to reduce to.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex v. ab aliquo, to hear from one; de aliquo, about one, alſo from one, as, ſæpe hoc audivi de patre, for ex patre, Cic. Audire bene v. male apud ſocios, ab omnibus, to be well ſpoken of, to have a good character; rexque paterque audiſti, have been called, Hor. Antigonus credit de ſuo adventu eſſe auditum, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in ſuſpicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, to go to law, Liv. in circulum, into a company, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, he has ſucceeded to an eſtate: ei uſu venit, happened, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, ſcribito, occurs, Cic.

ADVENIRE et adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, to come to.

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, et antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, conſilia et itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, to meet with, to ſpeak to; ego et frater conveniemus, copiæ convenient, will meet together; convenit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, I and my brother are agreed; fævis inter ſe convenit urſis, Juv. Ipſi ſecum non convenit, v. ipſe, he is inconſiſtent; pax convenit, is agreed upon; rem conventuram putamus, Cic. conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, agree; calcei pedibus v. ad pedes conveniunt, ſit, ſuit; hoc in illum convenit: Catilinam interfectum eſſe convenit, ought to have been ſlain, Cic. Convenire in manum, the uſual form of marriage, named Coemptio, whereby women were called matres familias.

SENTIRE ſonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive;* cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion*; bene v. male de eo, *to think well or ill of him.*

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter ſe; alicui rei, de v. in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree*; *So* diſſentire; et ab aliquo, *to diſagree*; ne vita orationi diſſentiat, Sen.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philoſophiam, *to profeſs, to teach publicly*; ſe candidatum, *to declare himſelf a candidate for an office*; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud cenſorem, *to give an account of, to declare how much one has.*

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter ſe; *ſometimes* alicui, ad, v. apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; ſectam Cæſaris, *to be of his party*, Cic. Aſſequi, conſequi, *to overtake*; gloriam, *to attain.* Conſequi hæreditatem, *to get*, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love, praiſe, &c.*

NITI haſtâ; in cubitum, *to lean*; ejus conſilio, in eo, *to depend on*; ad gloriam, ad, v. in ſumma, *to aim at*; in vetitum, in adverſum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to ſtrive*; gradibus, *to aſcend.*

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one*; ventis adverſis, *to have croſs winds*; honore uſus, *one who has enjoyed a poſt of honour.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, v. -no, -re; ejus opinionis, v. ea opinione; in maxima ſpe; in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, cum imperio; magno periculo, & in periculo; in tuto; apud ſe, *in his ſenſes*; ſui juris, v. mancipii, *to be at his own diſpoſal*; Res eſt in vado, *is ſafe*, Ter. Eſt animus, *ſc.* mihi, *I have a mind*, Virg. Eſt ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cauſe*; bene, male eſt mihi, *with me*; nihil eſt mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you:*

Quid eſt tibi, *ſc.* rei, *What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might ſee*; religio eſt mihi id facere, *I ſcruple to do it*; ſi eſt, ut facere velit, ut facturus ſit, ut admiſerit, &c. for ſi velit, &c. Ter. Eſt ut viro vir latius ordinet arbuſta ſulcis, *it happens*, Hor. Certum eſt facere, *ſc.* mihi, *I am reſolved*, Ter. Non certum eſt, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id. Caſſius quærere ſolebat, Cui Bono fuerit? Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

Adesse pugnæ, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be preſent*; alicui, *to favour, to aſſiſt*; ſcribendo, *v.* eſſe ad ſcribendum, *to ſubſcribe one's name to a decree of the ſenate*, Cic. conſilio, utrique, *to be a counſellor to*, Nep.

Abesse domo, urbe, a domo, *to be abſent*; alicui, *v.* deeſſe, *to be wanting, not to aſſiſt*; a ſole, *to ſtand out of the ſun*; ſumptus funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him*, Liv. abeſſe a perſona principis, *to be inconſiſtent with the character*, Nep. Paulum *v.* parum abfuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. *they were near taking, &c.* Tantum abeſt ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. *is ſo far from being &c.* Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniæ, a ſocietate ſceleris, &c. Nep.

Interesse convivio, *v.* in convivio, *to be at a feaſt*; anni decem interfuerunt, *intervened*; ſtulto intelligens quid intereſt, Ter. Hoc dominus et pater intereſt, Id. Inter hominem et belluam hoc intereſt, Cic. *differ in this, this is the difference*; multum intereſt, utrum, *it is of great importance.* Pons inter eos interest, *is between*, Cic.

Præesse exercitui, *to command*, comitiis, judicio, quæſtioni, *to preſide in* or *at.*

Obesse ei, *to hurt, to hinder.*

Superesse, *to be over and above*; alicui, *to ſurvive*; modo vita ſuperſit, *ſc.* mihi, *if I live*; ſupereſt, ut, *it remains, that.*

Ire ad arma, ad faga, *to go to war*; in jus, *to go to law*; pedibus in ſententiam alicujus, *to agree with*; viam, *v.* viâ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, menſis it, *paſſes.*

Abire magiſtratu, *to lay down an office*; in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth*; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain*; decem menſes abierunt, *have paſt*, Ter. Non hoc tibi ſic abibit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation.*

Adire periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life.*

Exire vitâ, e, *v.* de vita, *to die*; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, *to avoid.* Virg. Tempus inducias cum Vejenti populo exierat, *had expired*, Liv.

Inire magiſtratum; ſuffragium, rationem, conſilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon*; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum *vel* ab eo, *to gain his favour:* Ineunte æſtate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of a*

but we seldom say, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, *from our early years.*

Obire diem edicti, *vel* auctionis, judicium, vadimonium, *to be present at*; provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit, to go through*, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, *to perform*; pugnas, Virg. mortem, *vel* morte; diem supremum, *v.* diem, *to die.*

Præire alicui, *to go before*; verba, carmen, *vel* sacramentum alicui, *to repeat* or *read over before*; alicui voce, quid judicet; *to prescribe* or *direct by crying*, Cic.

Prodire in publicum, *to go abroad*; non præterit te, *you are not ignorant*, Cic. Dies induciarum præteriit, *is past*, Nep.

Redire in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again.*

Subire murum, *vel* -o, ad montes, *to come up to*; laborem, *vel* -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, *to undergo*; spes, timor subiit animum, *came into.*

VELLE aliquem, sc. alloqui *vel* conventum, *to desire to speak with*; alicui, ejus causâ, *to wish one's good*; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny*, Liv. Quid tibi vult? *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, sc. esse, *I will admonish them again and again*, Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done*; nollem huc exitum, sc. esse a me, *I wish I had not come out here*, Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose* or *make*; privilegium de aliquo, *to propose* or *pass an act of impeachment against one*, Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*; repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum, hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter. lætitiam de re, *to rejoice*; præ se, *to pretend* or *declare openly*; alienam personam, *to disguise one's self*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter. manus, *to engage*, Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr and Cr*, Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires.*

Conferre benevolentiam alicui, in *vel* erga aliquem, *to shew*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay*; operam, tempus, studium ad *vel* in rem, et impendere, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra castris, *to encamp over against one another*; se in, *vel* ad urbem, *to go to*; tributa, *to pay*; se alicui, *vel* cum aliquo, *to compare*; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, *serve, are useful to*, Quinct.

Deferre fitulam *vel* sitellam, *to bring the ballot-box*; aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell*; *rarely* alicui; causam ad patronos;

honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer*; in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic. aliquem ambitûs, de ambitu, nomen alicujus, ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*; primas sc. partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERRE *vel* transferre rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, *to be distracted* or *torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo funere, et cum funere, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad cœlum laudibus, *to raise, to extol*; foras peccatum, *to divulge*.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, se, pedem, *to advance*; litem, *vel* periculum capitis alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to bring one to trial for his life*.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, *to expose, to present*.

PERFERRE legem, *to carry through, to pass it*.

PRÆFERRE facem ei, *to carry before*; salutem reipublicæ suis commodis, et anteferre, anteponere, *to prefer*. Prælatus equo, *riding before*.

PROFERRE imperium, *to enlarge*; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish*; nuptias, diem, *to delay*.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se v. pedem, *to retreat*; gratiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, *vel* ex aliquo, et reportare, *to gain*; institutum, *to renew*; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the Equites the right of judging*; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, commentarium, &c. *to mark down*; aliquid acceptum alicui, et in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted*; pecunias acceptas et expensas, nomina *vel* summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts*; alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by*; in v. inter ærarios, *to reduce to the lowest class*; in numerum deorum, in *vel* inter deos, et reponere, *to rank among*; pugnas, res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore, *to resemble*; amissos colores, *to regain*, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, *to post one's books, to state accounts*; in Latinam linguam, *to translate*; verba, *to use metaphorically*; culpam in eum et rejicere, *to lay the blame on him*.

II. FIGURES of SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbăton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

1. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent, scil. homines: Dic mihi, Damœta, cujum pecus; that is, Dic *(tu)* mihi, Damœta, *(cum hominem)* cujum pecus *(est hoc pecus.)* Aberant bidui, sc. iter *vel* ire. Decies sestertium, sc. centena millia. Quid multa? sc. dicam. Antiquum obtines, sc. morem, *v.* institutum, *Plaut.* Hodie in ludum occæpi ire literarium, ternas jam scio, sc. literas, i. e. AMO, *Id.* Triduo abs te nullas acceperam, sc. literas, i. e. epistolas, *Cic.* Brevi dicam, sc. sermone: *So* Complecti, respondere, &c. brevi. Dii meliora, sc. faciant: Rhodum volo, inde Athenas, sc. ire, *Id.* Bellicum, *v.* classicum canere, sc. signum, *Liv.* Civicâ donatus, sc. coronâ; *So* obsidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c. *Id.* Epistola librarii manu est, sc. scripta, *Cic.* So in English, "The twelve," i. e. apostles; "The elect," i. e. persons.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called ASYNDETON; as, Deus optimus maximus, sc. et; Sartum tectum conservare, i. e. sartum et tectum; *So* Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit, *Cic.* Ferte citi flammas, date vela, impellite remos, *Virg.* Velis nolis, sc. seu.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of ENNALAGE, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; ANTIPTŌSIS, i. e. the putting of one case for another; HELLENISM or GRÆCISM, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; SYNESIS, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c. thus, Samnitium duo millia cæsi, *is* Duo millia *(hominum)* Samnitium *(fuerunt homines)* cæsi, *Liv.* So Monstrum quæ, scil. mulier, *Hor.* Scelus qui, sc. homo, *Ter.* Omnia Mercurio similis, scil. secundum, *Virg.* Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati; i. e. Missi legati *(et)* uterque *(legatus missus)* de magnis rebus, *Horat.* Servitia repudiabat, cujus, scil. servitii, *Sall.* Cat. 51. Familia nostra, quorum, &c. sc. hominum, *Sall.* Concursus populi, mirantium, *Liv.* Illum ut vivat, optant, for ut ille vivat, *Ter.* Populum late regem, for regnantem, *Virg.* Expediti militum, for milites; Classis stabat Rhegii, for ad Rhegium, *Liv.* Latium Capuaque agro multati, sc. homines, *Id.* Utraque formosæ, sc. mulieres, *Ovid.* Aperite aliquis ostium, *Ter.* Sensit delapsus, for delapsum, sc. se esse, *Virg.*

When a writer frequently uſes the Ellipſis, his ſtyle is ſaid to be elliptical or conciſe.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is abſolutely neceſſary to expreſs the ſenſe; as, *Video oculis*, I ſee with my eyes; Sic ore locuta eſt; adeſt præſens: Nuſquam gentium; vivere vitam; ſervire ſervitutem; Quid mihi Celſus agit? Fac me ut ſciam, &c. Suo ſibi gladio hunc jugulo, *Ter.* Suo ſibi ſucco vivunt, *Plaut.*

When a conjunction is uſed apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, Una Euruſque Notuſque ruunt, *Virg.*

When that which is in reality one, is ſo expreſſed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, Pateris libamus et auro, *for* aureis pateris, *Virg.*

When ſeveral words are uſed to expreſs one thing, it is called PERIPHRASIS; as, Urbs Trojæ, *for* Troja, *Virg.* Res voluptatum, *for* voluptates, *Plaut.* Uſus purpurarum, *for* purpura; Genus piſcium, *for* piſces, *Hor.*

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the tranſgreſſion of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly uſed in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various ſorts into which it is divided, are, *Anaſtrŏphe*, *Hyſtĕron protĕron*, *Hypallăge*, *Synchĕſis*, *Tmeſis*, and *Parenthĕſis*.

1. ANASTROPHE is the inverſion of words, or the placing of that word laſt which ſhould be firſt; as, Italiam contra; His accenſa ſuper; Spemque metumque inter dubii; *for* contra Italiam, ſuper his, inter ſpem, &c. Vir. Terram ſol facit are, *for* are facit, Lucr.

2. HYSTERON PROTERON is when that is put in the former part of the ſentence, which, according to the ſenſe, ſhould be in the latter; as, Valet atque vivit, *for* vivit atque valet, Ter.

3. HYPALLAGE is the exchanging of caſes; as, Dare claſſibus auſtros, *for* dare claſſes auſtris, Virg.

4. SYNCHESIS is a confuſed and intricate arrangement of words; as, Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras; *for* Quæ ſaxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras, Virg.

5. TMESIS is the diviſion of a compound word, and the interpoſing of other words betwixt its parts; as, Septem ſubjecta trioni gens, *for* Septentrioni, Virg. Quæ meo cunque animo libitum eſt facere, *for* quæcunque, *Ter.*

6. PARENTHESIS is the inſerting of a member into the body of a ſentence, which is neither neceſſary to the ſenſe, nor at all affects the conſtruction; as, Tityre, dum redeo, *(brevis eſt via)* paſce capellas, *Virg.*

III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of tranſlating either from Engliſh into Latin, or from Latin into Engliſh, ariſes in a great meaſure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in Engliſh the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the ſentence in which they ſtand. Thus, in Latin, we can either ſay, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of theſe the ſenſe is equally obvious: but in Engliſh we can only ſay, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the Engliſh, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expreſſion, but alſo in point of harmony. We ſometimes indeed, for the ſake of variety and force, imitate in Engliſh the inverſion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worſhip, him declare I unto you.* But this is chiefly to be uſed in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be obſerved in tranſlating from Engliſh into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in ſentences is ſaid to be either *ſimple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwiſe expreſſed, either *natural* or *oratorial*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a ſentence are placed one after another according to the natural order of ſyntax.

Artificial or *Oratorial* order is when words are ſo arranged, as to render them moſt ſtriking, or moſt agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers uſe an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or leſs artificial, becauſe different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into Engliſh, we muſt firſt reduce the words in Latin to the order of Engliſh, which is called the *Analyſis* or *Reſolution* of ſentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readineſs. However to a beginner the obſervation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *firſt* the words, which ſerve to introduce the ſentence, or ſhew its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *laſtly*, the caſes which the verb governs, together with the circumſtances ſubjoined, to

the end of the sentence: supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi* (fili) *Cicero,* (tu) *vale, 2. et* (tu) *persuade tibi* (ipsi) *te esse quidem* (filium) *carissimum mihi: 3. sed* (tu persuade tibi ipsi te) *fore* (filium) *cariorem* (mihi in) *multo* (negotio,) *4. si* (tu) *lætabere talibus monumentis, 5. et* (si tu lætabere talibus) *præceptis.*

1. Farewell *(you)* well then, my *(son)* Cicero, 2. and assure *(you)* yourself that you are indeed *(a son)* very dear to me; 3. but *(assure you yourself that you)* shall be *(a son)* much dearer *(to me,)* 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and *(if you shall take delight in such)* instructions.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric.*

The QUANTITY of SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of Verse, is called *PROSODY.*

Syllables, with respect to their quantity, are either *long* or *short.*

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēnĕrē.*

Some syllables are *common;* that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris.*

A vowel is ſaid to be long or ſhort by nature, which is always ſo by cuſtom, or by the uſe of the poets.

In polyſyllables or long words, the laſt ſyllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the laſt ſyllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a ſyllable is not fixed by ſome particular rule, it is ſaid to be long or ſhort by *authority*, that is, according to the uſage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* is ſaid to be ſhort by authority, becauſe it is always made ſhort by the Latin poets.

In moſt Latin words of one or two ſyllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly diſtinguiſh by the ear a long ſyllable from a ſhort. Thus, *le* in *lĕgo* and *lēgi* ſeem to be ſounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in compoſition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlĕgo*, *perlēgi*; *relĕgo*, *-ēre*; *relēgo*, *-āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all ſyllables, the latter only to ſome certain ſyllables.

GENERAL RULES.

1. A vowel before another vowel is ſhort; as, *Mĕus*, *alĭus*: ſo *nĭhil*; *h* in verſe being conſidered only as a breathing. In like manner in Engliſh, *crĕate*, *bĕhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīcham*, &c. unleſs when followed by *r*; as, *fĭĕri*, *fĭerem*; thus,

Omnia jam fĭent, fĭĕri quæ poſſe negabam. Ovid.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declenſion, is long; as, *ſpecīēi*. So is the firſt ſyllable in *āer*, *dīus*, *cbeu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cāi*, and ſuch like words; but we ſometimes find *Pompĕi* in two ſyllables, Hor. II. Od. 7.

Exc. 3. The firſt ſyllable in *obe* and *Diana* is common; ſo likewiſe is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illĭus*, *unĭus*, &c. to be read long in proſe. *Alīus*, in the genit. is always long; *alterĭus* ſhort.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is ſhort; as, Danăe, Idĕa, Sophĭa, Symphonĭa, Simŏis, Hўades, Phăon, Deucalĭon, Pygmalĭon, Thebăis, &c.

Often it is long; as, Lycāon, Machāon, Didymāon; Amphīon, Arīon, Ixīon, Pandīon; Năis, Lāis, Achāĭa; Brisēis, Cadmēis; Latōus, et Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerēĭus, Priamēius; Achelōĭus, Minōus; Archelāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus; Ænēas, Penēus, Epēus, Acriſionēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Gigantēus; Darīus, Baſilīus, Eugenīus, Bacchīus; Caſſiopēa, Cæſarēa, Chæronēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicēa, Medēa, Panthēa, Penelopēa; Clĭo, Enyo, Elegīa, Iphigenĭa, Alexandrĭa, Thalĭa, Antiochĭa, idololatrĭa, litanĭa, pollĭa, &c. Lāertes, Dēiphŏbus, Dēĭjanīra, Trōes, herōes, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, Chorea, platea, Malea, Nereïdes, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, eōus, &c. So in foreign words, Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphĕa, Salmonĕa, Capharĕa, &c.* but sometimes long; as, *Idomenēa, Ilionēa*, Virg. Instead of *Elegīa, Cytherēa*, we find *Elegēïa, Cythĕrēïa*, Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *scīence, idēa.*

2. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long *(by position, as it is called;)* as, *ārma, fātlo, āxis, gāza, major;* the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijŭgus, quadrijŭgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date velā, scandite muros, *Virg.*

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as the middle syllable in *volŭcris, tenebræ*, thus,

Et primò similis volŭcri, mox vera volūcris, Ovid.

Nox tenĕbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras, Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebræ, &c.*

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, because long by nature or *custom* in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambulācrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus, salūtis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo, &c.* is long by position, because the mute and the aliquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

3. A contracted syllable is long; as,

Nil, for *nihil*; *mi*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coăgo*; *alius*, for *aliius*; *tibīcen*, for *tibiicen*; *īt*, for *iit*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *lĭgæ*, for *bijŭgæ, &c.*

4. A diphthong is always long; as,

Aurum, Cæsar, Eubœa, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire, præustus*; thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. Virg.
Stipitibus duris agitur fudibusque præustis. Id.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

——— cum vacuus domino præiret Arion. Statius.

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by making the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

5. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci.*

Except *bibi, scīdi* from *scindo, fīdi* from *findo, tŭli, dĕdi, stĕti.*

6. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vīsum, cāsum, mōtum.*

Except *sătum*, from *sĕro; cĭtum*, from *cieo; lĭtum*, from *lĭno; sĭtum*, from *sĭno; flătum*, from *flo; ĭtum*, from *eo; dătum*, from *do; rŭtum*, from the compounds of *ruo; quĭtum*, from *queo; rătus*, from *reor.*

Preterites doubled.

7. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

Cĕcĭdi, tĕtĭgi, pĕpŭli, pĕpĕri, dĭdĭci, tŭtŭdi: except *cĕcīdi*, from *cædo; pĕpēdi*, from *pĕdo;* and when two consonants intervene; as, *fĕfelli, tĕtendi*, &c.

INCREASE of NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases that in the nominative; as, *rex, rēgis.* Here *re* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itĭnĕris.*

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, genĕri, genĕrōrum.*

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructŭi; res, rĕi;* which fall under Rule 1.

Third Declension.

8. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i,* and *u* short; as, *Pietātis, honōris; muliĕris, lapĭdis, marmŏris.*

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declenſion. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A ſhortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma*, *-ătis*, *poema*, *-ătis*.

O.

O ſhortens *ĭnis*, but lengthens *ōnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo*, *-ĭnis*; *Virgo*, *-ĭnis*; *Anio*, *-ēnis*; *Cicero*, *-ōnis*. Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Moſt of them ſhorten the genitive; as, *Macĕdo*, *-ŏnis*; *Saxo*, *-ŏnis*: Some are long; as, *Sueſſiōnes*, *Vettōnes*. *Brittōnes* is common.

I, C. D.

I ſhortens *ĭtis*; as, *Hydromĕli*, *-ĭtis*. *Ec* lengthens *-ecis*; as, *Hec*, *-ēcis*.

A noun in D ſhortens the crement; as, *David*, *-ĭdis*.

L.

Maſculines in AL ſhorten *ălis*; as, *Sal*, *sălis*; *Hannibal*, *-ălis*; *Haſdrubal*, *-ălis*; but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal*, *-ālis*.

Sōſis from *ſol* is long; alſo Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael*, *-ēlis*. Other nouns in *l* ſhorten the crement; as, *Vigil*, *-ĭlis*; *conſul*, *-ŭlis*.

N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon*, *-ōnis*; *Chiron*, *-ōnis*. Some ſhorten it; as, *Memnon*, *-ŏnis*; *Actæon*, *-ŏnis*.

EN ſhortens *inis*; as, *flumen*, *-ĭnis*; *tibicen*, *-ĭnis*. Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *anis*; as, *Titan*, *-ānis*: EN *ēnis*; as, *Siren*, *-ēnis*: IN *Inis*; as, *delphin*, *-ĭnis*: YN *ȳnis*; as, *Pharcyn*, *-ȳnis*.

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar*, *-āris*. Except the following, *bacchar*, *-ăris*; *jubar*, *-ăris*; *nectar*, *-ăris*: Alſo the adjective *par*, *-păris*, and its compounds, *impar*, *-ăris*; *diſpar*, *-ăris*, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, *Nar*, *Nāris*; the name of a river; *fur*, *fūris*; *ver*, *vēris*: Alſo *Rxinar*, *-ēris*; *Byzer*, *-ēris*; *Ser*, *Seris*; *Iber*, *-ēris*, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater*, *-ēris*; *character*, *-ēris*. Except *æther*, *-ĕris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor*, *-ōris*. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor*, *-ŏris*; *æquor*, *-ŏris*: Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hector*, *-ŏris*; *Actor*, *-ŏris*; *rhetor*, *-ŏris*: Alſo *arbor*, *-ŏris*; and *memor*, *-ŏris*.

5. Other nouns in R ſhorten the genitive; AR *aris* maſc.; as, *Cæſar*, *-ăris*; *Hamilcar*, *-ăris*; *lar*, *lăris*.

ER *eris* of any gender; as, *aer, aĕris; mulier, -ĕris; cadāver, -ĕris; iter*, antiently *itĭner, itinĕris; verbĕris*, from the obſolete *verber*. UR *uris;* as, *vultur, -ŭris; murmur, -ŭris*. YR *yris;* as, *Martyr, -yris*.

A S.

1. Nouns in AS which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas, -ātis; Mæcēnas, -ātis*. Except *anas, -ătis*.

2. Other nouns in AS ſhorten the crement; as, Greek nouns in *ădis, ătis*, and *ănis;* thus, *Pallas, -ădis; artocreas, -ĕătis; Melas, -ănis*, the name of a river. So *vas, vădis; mas, măris:* But *vas, vāſis*, is long.

E S.

ES ſhortens the crement; as, *miles, -ĭtis; Ceres, -ĕris; pes, pĕdis*.

Except *locŭples, -ētis; quies, -ētis; manſues, -ētis; hæres, -ēdis; merces, -ēdis*.

I S.

Nouns in IS ſhorten the crement; as, *lapis, -ĭdis; Sanguis, -ĭnis; Phyllis, -ĭdis*.

Except *Glis, glīris*; and Latin nouns which have *ītis;* as, *lis, lītis; dis, dītis; Quiris, -ītis; Samnis, -ītis:* But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charĭtis*.

The following alſo lengthen the crement: *Crenis, -īdis; Pſophis, -īdis; Neſis, -īdis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have alſo *in;* as, *Salămis*, or *-in, Salamīnis*.

O S.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos, -ōtis; flos, flōris*.

Except *Bos, bŏvis; compos, -ŏtis; impos, -ŏtis*.

U S.

US ſhortens the crement; as, *tempus, ŏris; tripus, -ŏdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis, ūris*, and *ūtis;* as, *incus, ūdis; jus, jūris; ſalus, -ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligŭris;* the obſolete *pecus, pecŭdis;* and *intercus, -ŭtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris;* as, *melius, -ōris*.

Y S.

YS ſhortens *ydis* or *ydos*; as, *chlamys*, *-ȳdis*, or *ȳdos*: and lengthens *ynis*; as, *Trachys*, *-ȳnis*.

B S. P S. M S.

Nouns in S with a conſonant going before, ſhorten the penult of the genitive; as, *cælebs*, *-ĭbis*; *inops*, *-ŏpis*, *hiems*, *-ĕmis*.

Except *Cyclops*, *-ōpis*; *ſeps*, *sēpis*; *gryps*, *grȳphis*; *Cercops*, *-ōpis*; *plebs*, *plēbis*; *hydrops*, *-ōpis*.

T.

T ſhortens the crement; as, *caput*, *-ĭtis*.

X.

1. Nouns in X which have the genitive in *gis*, ſhorten the crement; *conjux*, *-ŭgis*; *remex*, *-ĭgis*; *Allobrox*, *-ŏgis*; *Phryx*, *Phrўgis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*; and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewiſe *frūgis*.

2. EX ſhortens *icis*; as, *vertex*, *-ĭcis*: except *vibex*, *-icis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, *-īcis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, *-ūcis*, *&c.*

Except *fălcis*, *nĕcis*, *vĭcis*, *prĕcis*, *calĭcis*, *cilĭcis*, *pĭcis*, *fornĭcis*, *nĭvis*, *Cappadŏcis*, *dŭcis*, *nŭcis*, *crŭcis*, *trŭcis*, *onўchis*, *Erўcis*, *maſtȳx*, *-ўchis*, the roſin of the *lentiſcus*, or maſtich-tree, and many others, whoſe quantity can only be aſcertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as *Syphax*, *-ācis*, or *-ăcis*; *Sandȳx*, *-ĭcis*, or *-īcis*; *Bebrȳx*, *-ўcis*, or *-ȳcis*.

Increaſe of the Plural Number.

9. Nouns of the plural number which increaſe, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but ſhorten *I*, and *U*; as, *musārum*, *rērum*, *dominōrum*; *rēgĭbus*, *portŭbus*: except *bŏŏbus* or *bŭbus*, contracted for *bŏvĭbus*.

INCREASE of VERBS.

A verb is ſaid to increaſe, when any part has more ſyllables than the ſecond perſon ſingular of the preſent of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the ſecond ſyllable *ma* is the *increaſe* or *crement*; for the laſt ſyllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increaſes by ſeveral ſyllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmĭni*; in which caſe it is ſaid to have a *firſt*, *ſecond*, or *third increaſe*.

10. In the increaſe of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; *i*, and *u*, ſhort; as,

Amāre, docēre, amātōte; legĭmus, sŭmus, volŭmus.

The poets sometimes shorten *dăr̆unt* and *fĕr̆unt*; and lengthen *rīmus* and *rītis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as, ——*transferītis aquas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the Quantity of the PENULT of Words.

1. Patronymics in IDES or ĂDES usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamĭdes, Atlantĭădes, &c.* Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelīdes, Tydīdes*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE, and ONE, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Aeāis, Ptolemāis, Chryseis, Æneis, Memphītis, Latōis, Ioariōtis, Nerine, Arisōne.* Except *Thebăis*, and *Phocăis*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in ACUS, ICUS, IDUS, and IMUS, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptĭăcus, academĭcus, lepĭdus, legĭtimus*; also superlatives; as, *forlĭssimus*, &c. Except *opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, pudīcus, mendīcus, pōsticus, fīdus, infīdus*, (but *perfĭdus*, of *per* and *fĭdes*, is short,) *bīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, opīmus*; and two superlatives, *īnus, prīmus.*

4. Adjectives in ALIS, ANUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis, urbānus, ovārus, æstīvus, decōrus, arenōsus.* Except *barbărus, opĭpărus.*

5. Verbal adjectives in ILIS shorten the penult; as, *agĭlis, facĭlis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis, civīlis, berīlis*, &c. To these add, *exĭlis, subtĭlis*; and names of months, *Aprīlis, Quinctīlis, Sextīlis*: Except *humĭlis, parĭlis*; and also *similis.* But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versătilis, volatĭlis, umbrătilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in INUS derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c.; also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracīnus, crocīnus, cedrīnus, faginus, oleaginus*; *adamantīnus, cristallīnus, crassīnus, pristīnus, perendīnus*, &c.

Other adjectives in INUS are long; as, *agnīnus, asinīnus, ānus, clandestīnus, Latīnus, marīnus, supīnus, vespertīnus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in OLUS, OLA, OLUM; and ULUS, ULA, ULUM, always shorten the penult; as, *urtĭcŭlus, filĭŏla, miscĕllum; lectŭlus, rătiuncŭla, corcŭlum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in TIM lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātim, viritim, tribūtim.* Except *affātim, perpĕtim*, and *piātim.*

9. Desideratives in URIO shorten the antepenultima, which in

the second and third person is the penult; as, *esŭrio, esŭris, esŭrit.* But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable: as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris,* &c.

PENULT of PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult. Abdēra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amȳclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogīton, Arpīnum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busīris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darīci, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus; Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus; Heliogabūlus, Henrīcus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippōnax, Hispānus; Irēne; Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta; Lugdūnum, Lysēras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Messāla, Messāna, Milētus; Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris, et -us, Pharsālus, Phœnīce, Poltes, Polyclētus, Polynīces, Priāpus; Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonīce, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Thessalonīca, Veröna, Veronīca.

The following are short; Amāthus, Amphipŏlis, Anabāsis, Anticȳra, Antigŏnus, et -ne, Antilŏchus, Antiŏchus, Antiŏpa, Antīpas, Antipăter, Antiphănes, Antiphātes, Antiphila, Antiphon, Anȳtus, Apŭlus, Areopăgus, Arimīnum, Armēnus, Athēsis, Attălus, Attica; Bitūrix, Bructēri; Calăber, Callicrătes, Callistrătus, Candăce, Cantăber, Carneădes, Cherūsci, Chrysŏstŏmus, Cleombrŏtus, Cleomēnes, Corȳcos, Constantinopŏlis, Cratērus, Cratylus, Cremnēra, Crustumēri, Cybēle, Cycălades, Cyăices; Damŏcles, Dardănus, Dejŏces, Dejotărus, Democritus, Demipho, Didȳmus, Diogēnes, Drepănum, Dumnŏrix; Empedŏcles, Ephēsus, Evergētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripȳlus; Fucīnus; Geryŏnes, Gyărus; Hecyra, Heliopŏlis, Hermiŏne, Herodŏtus, Hesiŏdus, Hesiŏne, Hippocrātes, Hippotămus, Hypăta, Hypănis; Icæus, Icētas, Illyris, Iphĭtus, Ismārus, Ithăca; Laodice, Laomēdon, Lampsăcus, Lamȳrus, Lapithæ, Leucrētilia, Lipăre, v. -a, Lysimăchus, Longimānus; Marāthon, Mænălus, Marmarica, Massagētæ, Matrōna, Megăra, Melītus, et -ta, Metropŏlis, Mutīna, Mycŏnus; Neŏcles, Neritos, Norīcum; Omphăle; Patăra, Pegăsus, Pharnăces, Pisistrătus, Polydămas, Polyxēna, Porsēna, or Porsenna, Praxiclēs, Pazelli, Pylades, Pythagŏras; Sarmăta, Sarsīna, Semele, Semiramis, Sequāni, et -a, Seriphus, Sicŏris, Socrātes, Sodŏma, Sotădes, Spartăcus, Sporădes, Strongȳle, Stymphălus, Sybăris; Taygētus, Telegŏnus, Telemăchus, Tenĕdos, Tarrăco, Theophănes, Theophilus, Tomȳris; Urbicus; Veneti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xenocrātes; Zoilus, Zopȳrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Bactri*, Icaria.

Bātāvi, Juv. et Mart. *Fortuītus*, Horat. *Fortuĭtus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus* of three ſyllables; but it may be ſhortened like *gratuĭtus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præſtolor*, &c. are by ſome lengthened, and by ſome ſhortened; but for their quantity, there is no certain authority.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

11. *A* in the end of a word declined by caſes is ſhort; as, *Musă*, *templă*, *Tydeă*, *lampădă*.

Exc. The ablative of the firſt declenſion is long; as, *Musâ*, *Æneâ*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Æneâ*, *O Pallâ*.

A in the end of a word not declined by caſes is long; as, *Amā*, *fruſtrā*, *præterea*, *ergā*, *intrā*.

Exc. *Ităă*, *quiă*, *ejă*, *poſteă*, *pută*, (adv.) and ſometimes, though more rarely, the prepoſitions *contrā*, *ultrā*; and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintă*, &c.

E.

12. *E* final is ſhort; as, *Natĕ*, *ſedīlĕ*, *patrĕ*, *currĕ*, *nempĕ*, *antĕ*.

Exc. 1. Monoſyllables are long; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*: except theſe enclitic conjunctions *quĕ*, *vĕ*, *nĕ*; and theſe ſyllabical adjections, *ptĕ*, *cĕ*, *tĕ*; as, *ſuaptĕ*, *hujuſcĕ*, *tutĕ*.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the firſt and fifth declenſion are long; as, *Calliŏpē*, *Anchiſē*, *fidē*. So *rē-*, and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē*, *hodiē*, *pridiē*, *poſtridiē*, *quotidiē*: Alſo Greek nouns which want the ſingular; *Cetē*, *melē*, *Tempē*; and the ſecond perſon ſingular of the imperative of the ſecond conjugation; as, *Doce*, *mane*; but *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are ſometimes ſhort.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the firſt and ſecond declenſion are long; as, *placidē*, *pulchrē*, *valdē*, contracted for *validē*: To theſe add *fermē*, *ferē*, and *obē*; alſo all adverbs of the ſuperlative degree; as, *doctiſſimē*, *fortiſſimē*: But *benĕ* and *malĕ* are ſhort.

I.

13. *I* final is long; as, *Dominī*, *patrī*, *docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are ſhort; as, *Alexĭ*, *Amaryllĭ*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declenſion which increaſe, is common; as, *Pallădi, Minoïdi.*

Mihi, tibi, ſibi are alſo common: So likewiſe are *ibi, ubi, quaſi*; and *cui*, when a diſſyllable, which in poetry is ſeldom the caſe. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always ſhort.

O.

(14. *O* final is common;) as, *Virgo, Amo, quando.*

Exc. 1. Monoſyllables are long; as, *ō, dō, ſtō, prō*: The dative and ablative ſing. of the ſecond declenſion is long; as, *librō, dominō*: Alſo Greek nouns; as, *Didō*, and *Athō* the genit. of *Athos*: and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō.* To theſe add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewiſe *illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō.*

Exc. 2. The following words are ſhort; *Egŏ, ſciŏ, cedŏ* a defective verb, *homŏ, citŏ, illicŏ, immŏ, duŏ, ambŏ, modŏ*, with its compounds, *quamodŏ, dummodŏ, poſtmodŏ*: but ſome of theſe are alſo found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long: in other poets it is ſhort. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and *Y*.

(15. *U* final is long; *Y* final is ſhort;) as, *Vultū: Moly.*

B, D, L, M, R, T.

(16. *B, D, L, R*, and *T*, in the end of a word, are ſhort;) as, *Ab, apŭd, ſemĕl, precŏr, capŭt.*

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl; pār* and its compounds; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr*; alſo nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Iber*: likewiſe *aēr, æthēr*: to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Danĭēl, Dāvĭd.*

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel ſhort; as, *Militŭm ætāte*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *millĭt' ætāte*; except in compound words; as, *circŭmăgo, circŭmeo.*

C, N.

(17. *C*, and *N*, in the end of a word, are long;) as,

Ac, ĭc, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n;* as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn; Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn; Lacedæmōn,* &c.

The following words are ſhort, *nĕc,* and *donĕc; forſităn, ĭn, forsăn, tamĕn, ăn, vidĕn;* likewiſe nouns in *en* which have *ĭnis* in the genitive; as, *carmĕn, crimĕn;* together with ſeveral Greek nouns; as, *Iliŏn, Pylŏn, Alexĭn.*

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

18. *AS, ES,* and *OS,* in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

The following words are ſhort, *anăs, ĕs,* from *ſum,* and *penĕs; ŏs* having *ŏſſis* in the genitive, *compŏs,* and *impŏs;* alſo a great many Greek nouns of all theſe three terminations; as, *Arcăs* and *Arcădăs, herōăs, Phrygĕs, Arcadŏs, Tenĕdŏs, Mĕlos,* &c. and Latin nouns in *es,* having the penult. of the genitive increaſing ſhort; as, *Alĕs, hebĕs, obsĕs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs,* and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

19. *IS, US,* and *YS,* in the end of a word, are ſhort; as, *Turrĭs, legĭs, legĭmŭs, annŭs, Capўs.*

Exc. 1. Plural caſes in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnīs,* for *omnes, fructūs, manūs:* alſo the genitive ſingular of the fourth declenſion; as, *portūs.* But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is ſhort; as, *floribŭs, fructibŭs, rebŭs.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *ītis, īnis;* or *entis;* as, *Īs, Sannīs, Salamīs, Sīmoīs:* To theſe add the adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs;* the noun *glīs,* and *vīs,* whether it be a noun or a verb; alſo *is* in the ſecond perſon ſingular, when the plural has *ītis;* as, *audīs, abīs, poſſīs. Rīs* in the future of the ſubjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monoſyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, crūs:*

also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis,* or *ŏdis*; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, anăthūs, tripūs.* To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension; as, *Clĭûs, Sapphûs, Mantûs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs.*

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcȳs, Trachȳs.*

The last syllable of every verse is common; Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVE and COMPOUND Words.

Derivatives.

20. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amicus, *from*	ămo.	Decŏro, *from*	decus, -ŏris.
Auctiōnor,	auctio, -ōnis.	Exŭlo,	exul, -ŭlis.
Auctōro,	auctor, -ōris.	Păvidus,	paveo.
Audītor,	audītum.	Quiritо,	Quiris, -ĭtis.
Auspĭcor,	auspex, -ĭcis.	Radīcītus,	radix, -icis.
Caupōnor,	caupo, -ōnis.	Sospĭto,	sospes, -ĭtis.
Compĕtītor,	compĕtītum.	Nātura,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornix, -ĭcis.	Mātercnus,	māter.
Custōdio,	custos, -ōdis.	Lĕgebam, &c.	lĕgo.
Decŏrus,	decor, -ŏris.	Lĕgeram, &c.	lĕgi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Long from short.*

Dēni, *from* dĕcem.	Suspīcio, *from* suspĭcor.	Mōbĭlis, *from* mŏveo.	
Fōmes, fŏveo.	Sēdes	sĕdeo.	Hūmor, hūmus.
Hūmanus, hŏmo.	Sēcius,	sĕcus.	Jūmentum, jŭvo, &c.
Rēgula, rĕgo.	Pēnuria,	pĕnus.	

2. *Short from long.*

Arena *and* hărĭsa, *from*	āreo.	Lūcerna, *from*	lūceo.
Nŏta *and* nŏto,	nōtus.	Dux, -ŭcis,	dūco.
Vădum,	vādo.	Stăbilis,	stābam,
Fides,	fīdo.	Dĭtio,	dis, dītis.
Sŏpor,	sōpio.	Quăsillus,	qualus, &c.

Compounds.

21. Compounds follow the quantity of the ſimple words which compoſe them; as, *Dēdūco*, of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōfĕro*, *antĕfĕro*, *consŏlor*, *dēnŏto*, *dēpecŭlor*, *deprāvo*, *dēſpero*, *dēſpūmo*, *deſquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērŭdio*, *exūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhŭmo*, *inveſtīgo*, *prægrāvo*, *prænāto*, *rĕgĕlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prægrāvis*, *dēsōlo*, *ſuffŏco*, & *ſuffŏco*, *diffĭdit* from *diffindo*, and *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*, *indĭco* and *indīco*, *permānet* from *permăneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effŏdit* in the preſent, and *effōdit* in the perfect; ſo *exĕdit* and *exēdit*; *devĕnit* and *devēnit*; *devĕnīmus* and *devēnīmus*; *reperīmus* and *reperĭmus*; *effŭgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cædo*; *incīdo*, from *in* and *cædo*, *ſuffŏco*, from *ſub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unleſs the letter following make it fall under ſome general rule; as, *ādmitto*, *percello*, *dĕoſculor*, *prŏhibeo*.

Exc. 1. *Agnĭtum*, *cognĭtum*, *dējĕro*, *pējĕro*, *innŭba*, *pronŭba*, *maledĭcus*, *veridĭcus*, *nihĭlum*, *ſemisŏpītus*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio*: *ambītus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the ſubſtantives *ambĭtus* and *ambĭtio* are ſhort. *Connubium* has the ſecond ſyllable common.

Exc. 2. The prepoſition *PRO* is ſhort in the following words: *prŏfundus*, *prŏfugio*, *prŏfŭgus*, *prŏnĕpos*, *prŏneptis*, *prŏfeſtus*, *prŏfari*, *prŏfiteor*, *prŏfanus*, *prŏfecto*, *prŏcella*, *prŏtervus*, and *prŏpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-ſtock *or* ſhoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; *propīno*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulſo*, *procūro*, and *Proſerpina*.

Exc. 3. The inſeperable prepoſitions *SĒ* and *DĪ* are long; as, *sēpăro*, *dīvello*; except *dĭrĭmo*, *dĭſertus*. *Re*

is short; as, *rĕmitto*, *rĕfĕro*: except in the imperſonal verb *rĕfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, and *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are uſually ſhortened; as, *nĕfas*, *nĕque*, *patĕfacio*, &c. *omnĭpotens*, *agrĭcŏla*, *fignĭfico*, &c. *duŏdĕcim*, *hŏdie*, *ſacrŏſanctus*, &c. But from each of theſe three are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by caſes; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken ſeparately; as, *ludīmagiſter*, *lucrīfacio*, *sīquis*, &c. *Idem* in the maſc. is long, in the neuter ſhort; alſo *ubīque*, *ibīdem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a ſyllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more ſyllables, one ſyllable is ſounded higher than the reſt, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of ſound, which is diſagreeable to the ear.

When accent is conſidered with reſpect to the ſenſe, or when a particular ſtreſs is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphăſis*.

There are three accents, diſtinguiſhed by their different ſounds; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *ſharp* accent raiſes the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [ˊ]; as, *próſero*, próſer.

2. The *grave* or *baſe* accent depreſſes the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone; and is thus marked [ˋ]; as, *amàvĕ*. This accent properly belongs to all ſyllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent firſt raiſes, and then ſinks the voice in ſome degree on the ſame ſyllable; and is therefore placed only upon long ſyllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [ˆ]; as, *amârc*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, *aliquà, cautiùs, doctè, anè*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poetâ, gloriâ*, in the ablative: *fructûs, tumultûs*, in the genitive: *nostrûm, vestrûm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergò*, on account of: *occîdit*, he slew; *Pumpîlî*, for *Pumpilii*; *amârîs*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A VERSE is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Caesura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. *Feet of two syllables.*

Spondeus,	consists of two long; as, *ōmnēs*.
Pyrrhichius,	two short; as, *dĕŭs*.
Iambus,	a short and a long; as, *ămāns*.
Trochæus,	a long and a short; as, *sērŭīt*.

2. *Feet of three syllables.*

Dactylus,	a long and two short; as, *scrībĕrĕ*.
Anapæstus,	two short and a long; as, *pĭĕtās*.
Amphimăcer,	a long, a short, and a long; as, *chārĭtās*.
Tribrăchys,	three short; as, *dŏmĭnŭs*.

The following are not so much used.

Molossus,	dēlēctānt.	*Dispondæus*,	ōrātōrēs.
Amphibrachys,	hŏmōrĕ.	*Diiambus*,	ămœnĭtās.
Bacchius,	dŏlōrēs.	*Choriambus*,	pōntĭfĭcēs.
Antibacchius,	pĕlĭūntŭr.	*Ditrochæus*,	cāntĭlēnă.

3. *Feet of four syllables.*

		Antispæstus,	Ălexăndĕr.
		Ionicus minor,	prŏpĕrābānt.
Procelusmaticus,	hŏmĭnĭbŭs.	*Ionicus major*,	cūcūrĭbĭtās.

Paon primus,	tĕmpŏrĭbŭs.	*Epitritus primus,*	vŏlŭptātēs.
Paon secundus,	pŏtēntĭă.	*Epitritus secundus,*	pœnĭtentēs
Paon tertius.	ănĭmātŭs.	*Epitritus tertius,*	dĭscŏrdĭas.
Paon quartus.	cĕlĕrĭtās.	*Epitritus quartus,*	fŏrtūnātŭs.

SCANNING.

The meaſuring of verſe, or the reſolving of it into the ſeveral feet of which it is compoſed, is called *Scanning.*

When a verſe hath juſt the number of feet requiſite, it is called *Verſus Acatalectus,* or *Acatalectĭcus,* an Acatalectic verſe: If a ſyllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectĭcus;* if there be a ſyllable too much, *Hypercatalectĭcus,* or *Hypermĕter.*

The aſcertaining whether the verſe be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depoſĭto* or *Clauſula.*

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verſe conſiſts of ſix feet. Of theſe the fifth is a dactyle, and the ſixth a ſpondee; all the reſt may be either dactyles or ſpondees; as,

Lădĕzĕ | quæ vĭl- | lām călă- | mō pĕr | mīsit ă- | grēſti. Virg.
Inſān- | dum, Rē- | gīnă, jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrem. Id.

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than ſeventeen ſyllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a ſpondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verſe is called *Spondaic;* as,

Cāră Dĕ- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs mă- | gnūm Jŏvĭs | īncrĕ, | mēntūm. Virg.

This verſe is uſed, when any thing grave, ſlow, large, ſad, or the like is expreſſed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four ſyllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a ſuperfluous ſyllable at the end. But this ſyllable muſt either terminate in a vowel, or in the conſonant *m,* with a vowel before it; ſo as to be joined with the following verſe, which in the preſent caſe muſt always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnĭa | Mĕrcūrĭ- | ō nūmĭ- | ĭs vō- | cēmquĕ cŏ- | lōrēmque
Et flavos crines———
Virg.

Thoſe Hexameter verſes ſound beſt, which have dactyles and ſpondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permiſit agreſti. Virg.
Pinguis et ingratæ premeretur caſeus urbi. Id.

Or which have more dactyles than ſpondees; as,

Tityre tu patulæ recubans ſub tegmine fagi

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. Virg.
Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt. Id.
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. Id.

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse is the CÆSURA.

Cæsura is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rĕ-gīnæ gră-vī jām-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Trichimĕris*: When on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimĕris*: When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthemimĕris*: and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Enneemimĕris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Illĕ lă-bās nīvĕ ūm mōl-lī fūl-ūs bŏs-cīmbō. Virg.

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, when they call it the *Cæsural pause*; as,

Tityre dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. Virg.

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rōmæ mentĭă tĕrrŭit ĭmpĭgĕr Hănnĭbăl ārmīs. Ennius.

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the ſenſe. All the words ſhould be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verſe ought only to be obſerved, ſo far as it correſponds with the natural expreſſion of the words. At the end of each line there ſhould be no fall of the voice, unleſs the ſenſe requires it; but a ſmall pauſe, half of that which we uſually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentaměter verſe conſiſts of five feet. Of theſe the two firſt are either dactyles or ſpondees; the third always a ſpondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæſtus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr sē- | mĭnă quĭ- | quĕ sŭæ. Propert.
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs tĕm- | pŭs ĭn ōm- | nĕ mĕis. Ovid.

But this verſe is more properly divided into two hemiſticks or halves; the former of which conſiſts of two feet, either dactyles or ſpondees, and a Cæſura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæſura: thus,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr | sēmĭnă | quĭsquĕ sŭ- | æ.
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpŭs ĭn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | īs.

The Pentameter uſually ends with a diſſyllable, but ſometimes alſo with a polyſyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Aſclepiadēan verſe conſiſts of four feet; namely, a ſpondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē- | gĭbŭs. Hor.

But this verſe may be more properly meaſured thus: In the firſt place, a ſpondee; in the ſecond, a dactyle; then a cæſura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verſe has three feet, a ſpondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvĭs | quæ tĭbĭ crē- | dĭtŭm. Horat.

Or it may be divided into a ſpondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verſe has five feet, viz. a trochee, ſpondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intĕ- | gĕr vī | tæ, ſcĕlĕ- | rīſquĕ | pūrŭs. Horat.

An Adonian verſe conſiſts only of a dactyle and ſpondee; as,

Jūpĭtĕr | ūrget. Horat.

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verſe conſiſts of three feet, a ſpondee, dactyle, and ſpondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | *aquŏrā* | *vēntīs*. Horat.

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verſe conſiſts of five feet, namely, a ſpondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmām | nĕc mĕtŭ- | ās dĭ- | ĕm, nĕc | ōptĕs. Mart.

8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewiſe *Dactylic*, conſiſts of four feet, a ſpondee or iambus, iambus and cæſura, then two dactyles; as,

Vīrtūs | rĕpūl- | ſæ | nĕſcĭă | sōrdĭdæ. Horat.

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verſe conſiſts of four feet. In the firſt and third place, it has either a ſpondee or iambus; in the ſecond and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a Cæſura; as,

Nĕc sŭ- | mĭt, aŭt | pōnīt | sĕcū- | rēs. Horat.

10. The LESSER ALCAIC.

The leſſer Dactylic Alcaic conſiſts of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbĭtrĭ- | ō pŏpŭ- | lārĭs | aūræ. Horat.

Of the above kinds of verſe, the firſt two take their names from the number of feet of which they conſiſt. All the reſt derive their names from thoſe by whom they were either firſt invented, or frequently uſed.

There are ſeveral other kinds of verſe, which are named from the feet by which they are moſt commonly meaſured; ſuch as the dactylic, trochaic, anapæſtic, and iambic. The laſt of theſe is moſt frequently uſed.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verſe there are two kinds. The one conſiſts of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimĕter*; the other conſiſts of ſix feet, and is called *Trimĕter*. The reaſon of theſe names is, that among the Greeks two feet were conſidered only as one meaſure in iambic verſe; whereas the Latins meaſured it by ſingle feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trime-

ter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sĭt æ- | stŭō- | sĭūs. Horat.
Trimeter, Sūīs | ĕt ī- | psa Rō- | ma vī- | rĭbūs | rŭit. Id.

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, *Cānĭdī- | ă trā- | ctāvīt | dăpēs.* Horat.
Vĭdē- | rĕ prŏpē- | rāntēs | dŏmūm. Id.
Trimeter, *Quōquō | scĕlē- | stī rŭī- | tis aŭt | cūr dĕx- | tĕrīs.* Id.
Păvĭdūm- | quĕ lĕpŏ- | r' aŭt ād | vĕnām | laquĕō | grŭĕm. Id.
Alĭtĭ- | bŭs ăt- | quĕ cănŭ- | bŭs bŏmĭ- | cīd' Hē- | ctŏrĕm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES in SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalœpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synærĕsis*, *Diærĕsis*; *Systŏle*, and *Diastŏle*.

1. SYNALOEPHA is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. Virg.

to be scanned thus,

Cōntĭcŭ- | ĕr' ōm- | nēs ĭn- | tĕntī- | qu' ōrā tĕ- | nēbānt.

The *Synalœpha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *ve*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. Virg.

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. Virg.
Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. Id.
Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.
Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.
Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. ECTHLIPSIS is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane? Pers.

thus,

O cū- | rās hŏmĭ- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst īn | rēbŭs ĭn- | ānē.

Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthlipsis are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. Virg.
Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. Id.

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. SYNÆRESIS is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as *Phœthon*, for *Phaethon*. So *ëi* in *Thesei, Orphei, deinde, Pompei*; *üi* in *huic, cui*; *öi* in *proinde*; *ëâ* in *aureâ*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. Ovid.
Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi. Virg.
Filius huic contrà, torquet qui sidera mundi. Id.
Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. Id.

So in *antehac, eadem, alvearia, deest, deerit, vehemens, anteit, eodem, alveo, graveolentis, omnia, semianimis, semihomo, fluviorum, totius, promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eâdemque viâ sanguisque animusque feruntur. Virg.
Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. Id.
Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. Hor.
Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulentia deerit. Virg.
Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. Hor.

Te ſemper anteit dira neceſſitas. Alcaic. Hor.
Uno eodemque igni, ſic noſtro Daphnis amore. Virg.
Cum refluit campis, & jam ſe condidit alveo. Id.
Inde ubi venêre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. Id.
Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. Id.
Cædit ſemianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. Id.
Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. Id.
Fluviorum rex Eridanus, campoſque per omnes. Id.
Magnanimoſque duces, totiuſque ex ordine gentis. Id.
Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. Ovid.

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the ſame ſyllable with the following vowel; as in *genva, tenvis; arjetat, tenvia, abjete, pitvia, parjetibus, Naſidjenus*; for *genua, tenuis*, &c. as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. Lucr.
Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore ſanguis. Virg.
Arjetat in portas et duros objice poſtes. Id.
Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. Id.
Ædificant, ſectâque intexunt abjete coſtas. Id.
Præcipuè ſanus, niſi cum pitvita moleſta eſt. Hor.
Parjetibuſque premunt arctis, et quatuor addunt. Virg.
Ut Naſidjeni juvit te cœna beati. Hor.

4. DIÆRESIS divides one ſyllable into two; as, *aulăi*, for *aulæ; Tröïæ*, for *Troje; Perſëus*, for *Perſeus; milïus*, for *milvus; ſoluït*, for *ſolvit; volüit*, for *volvit; aqüæ, süetus, süaſit, Süevos, relangüit, reliqüas*, for *aquæ, ſuetus*, &c. as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. Virg.
Stamina non ulli diſſoluenda Deo. Pentam. Tibullus.
Debuerant fuſos evolüiſſe ſuos. Id. Ovid.
Quæ calidum faciunt aqüæ tactum atque vaporem. Lucr.
Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque süetæ. Hor.
Atque alios alii inridenț, Veneremque süadent. Lucr.
Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Süevos. Lucan.
Impoſito fratri moribunda relangüit ore. Ovid.
Reliqüas tamen eſſe vias in mente patenteis. Lucr.

5. SYSTOLE is when a long ſyllable is made ſhort; as the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulĕrunt fastidia menses. Virg.

6. DIASTŎLE is when a syllable usually short is made long; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse;

Confidant, si tantus amōr, et mœnia condant.

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called PROSTHESIS; as, *gnavus*, for *navus*; *tetŭli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTHESIS; as, *relligio*, for *religio*; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called PARAGŌGE: as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHÆRESIS; as, *natus*, for *gnatus*: *tenderant*, for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called SYNCŎPE; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti*; *deûm*, for *deorum*. If from the end, APOCŎPE; as, *viden'*, for *videsne*; *Antōni*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called METATHESIS; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called ANTITHESIS; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*, *volbis*, for *vultis*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*, (*Poema* or *Carmen*.) Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION; in praise of the supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*; A poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits, which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour;

I *nter cuncta micans* I *gniti sidera cæl* I,
E *xpellit tenebras* E *toto Phœbus ut orb* E;
S *ic cæcas removet* JESUS *caliginis umbra* S,
V *ivificansque simul* V *ero præcordia mot* V
S *olem justitiæ* S *ese probat esse beati* S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle;) and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral poems* or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as, the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost of Milton*, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION of VERSES in POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verſe uſed. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satyres and Epiſtles, Ovid in his Metamorphōſis, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always uſe Hexameter verſe: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally uſe the Iambic, and ſometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in ſhorter poems, particularly thoſe which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Pſalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verſe are combined.

A Poem which has only one kind of verſe, is called by a Greek name, MONOCŌLON, ſc. *poema* v. *carmen*; or MONOCŌLOS, ſc. *ode*: that which has two kinds, DICŌLON; and that which has three kinds of verſe, TRICŌLON.

If the ſame ſort of verſe return after the ſecond line, it is called DICOLON DISTRŎPHON; as when a ſingle Pentameter is alternately placed after an Hexameter, which is named *Elegiac verſe* (carmen Elegiacum,) becauſe it was firſt applied to mournful ſubjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegēia, ſolve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.

This kind of verſe is uſed by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoſes; and alſo for the moſt part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem conſiſts of two kinds of verſe, and after three lines returns to the firſt, it is called *Dicolon Triſtrŏphon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetraſtrŏphon*; as,

Auream quiſquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obſoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. Horat.

When a poem conſiſts of three kinds of verſe, and after three lines always returns to the firſt, it is called *Tri-*

colon Triſtrophon; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetraſtrophon;* as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verſes are ſubjoined an archilochian iambic and a leſſer dactylic alcaic, which is named the *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verſe, becauſe frequently uſed by Horace; thus,

> Virtus recludens immeritis morī
> Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
> Cœtuſque vulgarēs, et udam
> Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any one of theſe parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verſe are comprehended, when taken by itſelf, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

DIFFERENT kinds of VERSE in HORACE and BUCHANAN.

I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of verſe.

1. *Aſclepiadēan*, See N° 3. page 272. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.——Buch. Pſ. 28, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, conſiſting of a ſpondee, three choriambuſes, and a pyrrychius or iambus: Hor. I. 11, 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.——Buch. Pſ. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satyres and Epiſtles.—Buch. Pſ. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimĕter*, N° 12.—Buch. Pſ. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. The *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Pſ. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 7[illegible] 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, conſiſting of ſeven trochees and a ſyllable; admitting alſo a tribrachys in the uneven places. i. e. in the firſt, third, fifth, and ſeventh foot; and in the even places, a tribrachys, ſpondee, dactyl, and anapeſtus.—Buch. Pſ. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapeſtic*, conſiſting of four anapeſtuſes, admitting

alſo a ſpondee or dactyl; and in the laſt place, ſometimes a tribrachys, amphimăcer, or trochee.—Pſ. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, conſiſting of three iambuſes and a ſyllable; in the firſt foot it has ſometimes a ſpondee or anapeſtus, and alſo a tribrachys.—Pſ. 131.

II. Odes and Psalms of two kinds of verſe following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Aſclepiadēan*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3, 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—— Buch. Pſ. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every firſt line *(Dactylico-Trochaic,)* conſiſting of the firſt four feet of an hexameter verſe, then three trochees or a ſpondee for the laſt; every ſecond verſe *(Iambic Archilochian)* conſiſting of an iambus or ſpondæus, an iambus, a cæſura, and then three trochees. Hor. I. 4.

3. The firſt line, *Hexameter*; and the ſecond, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, conſiſting of the four laſt feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7. 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Pſ. 4, 111.

4. Every firſt line, *Ariſtophanic*, conſiſting of a choriambus, and bacchīus or amphimacer: Every ſecond line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, conſiſting of epitrītus ſecundus, two choriambuſes, and a bacchīus. Hor. I. 8.

5. The firſt line, *(Trochaic,)* conſiſting of three trochees and a cæſura; or of an amphimacer and two iambuſes. The ſecond line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The firſt line, *Hexameter*; the ſecond *(Dactylic Archilochian,)* two dactyls and cæſura. Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Pſ. 12.

7. The firſt line, *Iambic Trimeter*; and the ſecond, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Pſ. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The firſt line, *Iambic Dimeter*; the ſecond *(Sapphic)* conſiſts of two dactyls, a cæſura, and four iambuſes, ad-

mitting alſo a ſpondeus, &c. But this verſe is commonly divided into two parts; the firſt, the latter part of a pentameter, N° 2. and the ſecond, iambic dimeter, N° 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The firſt line, *Hexameter*; the ſecond, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15. Buch. Pſ. 81.

10. *Hexameter*, and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Pſ. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The firſt line, *Sapphic*, N° 5. and the ſecond *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pſ. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Pſ. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Pſ. 36, 63.

14. The firſt line, *Hexameter*; and the ſecond line, the three laſt feet of an hexameter, with a long ſyllable or two ſhort ſyllables before. Buch. Pſ. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verſe. Buch. Pſ. 88, 114, 137.

16. The firſt line, *(Trochaic,)* three trochees and a ſyllable, admitting ſometimes a ſpondee, tribrachys, &c. The ſecond line, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pſ. 100.

III. Odes and Psalms of two kinds of verſe, and three or four lines in each ſtanza.

1. The three firſt lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, N° 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Pſ. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three firſt lines, *Aſclepiadēan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 12. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12. Buch. Pſ. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two firſt lines, *Ionic trimeter*, conſiſting of three Ionici minores; the third line, *Ionic tetrameter*, having one Ionicus minor more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two firſt lines have four trochees, admitting, in the ſecond foot, a ſpondee, dactyle, &c. The third

line, the ſame; only wanting a ſyllable at the end. Buch. Pſ. 66.

5. The three firſt lines, *Glyconian*, N° 4. admitting alſo a ſpondee or iambus in the firſt foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. Buch. Pſ. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verſe, and three or four lines in each ſtanza.

1. The two firſt lines, *Aſclepiadēan*, N° 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N° 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Pſ. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The firſt two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. The fourth, *the Leſſer Alcaic*, N° 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15. Buch. Pſ. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The firſt line, *Glyconian*; the ſecond, *Aſclepiadēan*; the third a ſpondee, three choriambuſes, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Pſ. 16.

4. The firſt line, *Hexameter*; the ſecond, *Iambic dimeter*; and the third, two dactyles and a ſyllable; Hor. Epod. 13. Buch. Pſa. 138. Sometimes the two laſt verſes are joined in one, or inverted; as, Buch. Pſ. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of ſyllables in Engliſh Verſe is not preciſely aſcertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monoſyllables are generally either long or ſhort, as occaſion requires. And in words of two or more ſyllables, the accented ſyllable is always long.

Of Engliſh verſe there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verſe*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, i. e. consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *ălōft, crĕāte:* or *Trochaic*, i. e. consisting of a long and a short syllable; as, *hōlў, lōftў*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of *four syllables*, or of *two feet*; as,

> With ravish'd ears,
> The monarch hears. *Dryden.*

2. Of *six syllables*, or of *three feet*; as,

> Aloft in awful state,
> The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*

3. Of *eight syllables*, or of *four feet*; as,

> While dangers hourly round us rise,
> No caution guards us from surprise. *Fran. Horace.*

4. Of *ten syllables*, or of *five feet*, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

> Poetic fields encompass me around,
> And still I seem to tread on Classic ground;
> For here the muse so oft her lamp has strung,
> That not a mountain rears its head unsung. *Addison.*

Obſ. 1. In meaſures of this laſt ſort, we ſometimes find the laſt line of a couplet or triplet ſtretched out to twelve ſyllables, or ſix feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verſe: thus,

A needleſs Alexandrine ends the ſong,
Which, like a wounded ſnake, drags its ſlow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was ſmooth; but Dryden taught to join
The varying verſe, the full reſounding line,
The long majeſtic march, and energy divine. *Pope.*

We alſo find the laſt verſe of a triplet ſtretched out to fourteen ſyllables, or ſeven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verſe before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant ſlow'rs is dreſt;
For thee the ocean ſmiles, and ſmooths her wavy breaſt,
And heav'n itſelf with more ſerene and purer light is bleſt. *Dryd.*

Sometimes alſo when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to power divine reſtor'd,
His thunder taught the world to know its lord,
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. *Rowe.*

Obſ. 2. The more ſtrictly iambic theſe verſes are, the more harmonious. In ſeveral of them, however, particularly in thoſe of ten ſyllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewiſe a ſpondee, inſtead of an iambus. Verſes of heroic meaſure ſometimes alſo admit a dactyle, or an anapeſtus, in place of the iambus; in which caſe a verſe of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen ſyllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
And many an humorous, many an amorous lay
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Was ſung by many a Bard on many a day.

This manner of writing every ſyllable fully is now generally uſed by the beſt poets, and ſeems much more proper than the ancient cuſtom of cutting off vowels by

an apoſtrophe. Our language abounds too much in conſonants of itſelf: the eliſion of vowels therefore ſhould be avoided as much as poſſible, and ought only to be admitted where it is abſolutely neceſſary; as, *o'er*, for *over*; *e'er*, for *ever*, &c. The ſame obſervations may be applied to every kind of meaſure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE compriſes verſes,

1. Of *three ſyllables*; as,

Dreadful gleams,
Diſmal ſcreams, &c. *Pope.*

2. Of *five ſyllables*; as,

In the days of old,
Stories plainly told,
Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of *ſeven ſyllables*; as,

Faireſt piece of well form'd earth,
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

Theſe are the meaſures which are moſt commonly uſed in Engliſh poetry, eſpecially thoſe of ſeven, eight, and ten ſyllables.

We have another meaſure very quick and lively, and therefore much uſed in ſongs, which may be called *Anapeſtic* meaſure, *i. e.* a verſe conſiſting of feet of three ſyllables, two ſhort, and one long, in which the accent reſts upon every third ſyllable. Verſes of anapeſtic meaſure conſiſt of two, three, or four feet; that is, of ſix, nine, or twelve ſyllables; thus,

Let the lóud trumpets sóund,
'Till the róofs all aróund,
The ſhrill échoes rebóund. *Pope.*

From the pláins, from the wóodlands, and gróves,
How the níghtíngales wárble their lóves! *Shenſtone.*

May I góvern my paſſions with ábſolute ſwáy,
And grow wíſer and bétter, as life wears awáy.

In this meaſure, a ſyllable is often retrenched from the firſt foot; as,

The ſwórd or the dárt
Shall pierce my ſad héart. *Addiſon.*

Ye ſhépherds ſo chéerful and gáy,
Whoſe flócks never cáreleſsly róam, &c.

I vów'd to the múſes my time and my cáre,
Since néither could wín me the ſmíles of the fáir. *Shenſtone.*

Theſe meaſures are variouſly combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in ſhort poems; for generally in longer works the ſame meaſure is always obſerved.

Stanzas are compoſed of more or fewer verſes, and theſe variouſly diverſified, according to the nature of the ſubject, and the taſte of the poet. But when they are ſtretched out to a great length, and conſiſt of verſes of many different meaſures, they are ſeldom agreeable.

Such poems as conſiſt of ſtanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verſes, nor the verſes to a certain number of ſyllables, nor the rhymes to a certain diſtance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are ſeveral of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the ſtrophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the moſt frequent, in which the firſt verſe anſwers to the third, and the third to the fourth. There is a ſtanza of this kind, conſiſting of verſes of eight and of ſix ſyllables alternately, which is very often uſed, particularly in ſacred poetry. Here for the moſt part the ſecond and fourth lines only rhyme together; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My riſing ſoul ſurveys:
Tranſported with the view, I'm loſt
In wonder, love, and praiſe. *Addiſon.*

Sometimes alſo the firſt and third lines anſwer to one another; as,

Keep ſilence, all created things,
And wait your maker's nod:
The muſe ſtands trembling while ſhe ſings
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This ſtanza is uſed in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verſes, each conſiſting of fourteen ſyllables, having a pauſe after the eighth ſyllable.

Several of theſe meaſures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional ſhort ſyllable at the end of the verſe; as,

1. *In heroic meaſure, or verſes of ten ſyllables, both in blank verſe and rhyme.*

In Blank Verſe.

'Tis heaven itſelf that points out an hereafter. *Addiſon.*

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.

The piece, you think, is incorrect? Why, take it,
I'm all ſubmiſſion; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verſes of eight ſyllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verſes of ſix ſyllables.*

'Twas when the ſeas were roaring,
With hollow blaſts of wind,
A damſel lay deploring
All on a rock reclined. *Gay.*

4. *In verſes of ſeven ſyllables.*

As Palemon, unſuſpecting,
Prais'd the ſly muſician's art;
Love, his light diſguiſe rejecting,
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenſtone.*

5. *In verſes of three ſyllables.*

Glooms inviting,
Birds delighting. *Addiſon.*

6. *In the Anapeſtic meaſure.*

Ah! friend, 'tis but idle to make ſuch a pother,
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenſtone.*

Now with furies ſurrounded,
Deſpairing, confounded.

Double rhyme is uſed chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burleſque compoſitions.

Verſes with double endings, in blank verſe, moſt frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country;
Let them be ſafe, and let me nobly periſh. *Thomſon.*

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
Darkneſs incloſ'd, and the winds whiſtled round me. *Otway.*

APPENDIX.

Of *Capitals*, *Abbreviations*, *Numerical Characters*, and the *Diviſion* of the *Roman Month*.

Capitals, or large letters, are uſed at the beginning of ſentences, of verſes, and of proper names. Some uſe them at the beginning of every ſubſtantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of ſpeech, unleſs they be emphatical, commonly begin with a ſmall letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. ſtands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conſcripti*; S. C. *Senatus Conſultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populuſque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, conſecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Seſtertius*, equal in value to two pounds of braſs and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*; A. M. *Artium Magiſter*, Maſter of arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a ſmall letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextius*; Cos. *Conſul*; Coſs. *Conſules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Impp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, In Engliſh, Eſq. *Eſquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuſcript*; MSS. *Manuſcripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewiſe often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id eſt*; h. e. *hoc eſt*; e. g. *exempli gratiâ*; v. g. *verbi gratiâ*.

Capitals were uſed by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpoſe were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters.* I. denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred.* By the various combination of theſe five letters, all the different numbers are expreſſed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. ſignifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a leſs value is placed before a letter of a greater, the leſs takes away what it ſtands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it ſtands for to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred & ten.

A thouſand is marked thus, CIↃ. which in later times was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IↃ. or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of Ↄ to IↃ. makes its value ten times greater; thus IↃↃ. marks *five thouſand*; and IↃↃↃ. *fifty thouſand.*

The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of Ↄ to the number CIↃ. makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIↃↃ. denotes *ten thouſand*; and CCCIↃↃↃ. *a hundred thouſand.* The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occaſion to expreſs a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIↃↃↃ, CCCIↃↃↃ. ſignified *two hundred thouſand*, &c.

We ſometimes find *thouſands* expreſſed by a ſtraight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$. denotes *three thouſand*; $\overline{\text{X}}$ *ten thouſand.*

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more ſimple, by theſe ten characters, or *Figures*, which,

from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nought, nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant Figures*: the last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left, thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand.
2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two.*

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together: CIↃ,IↃCCIXXX, or M,DCCLXXX. 1780.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

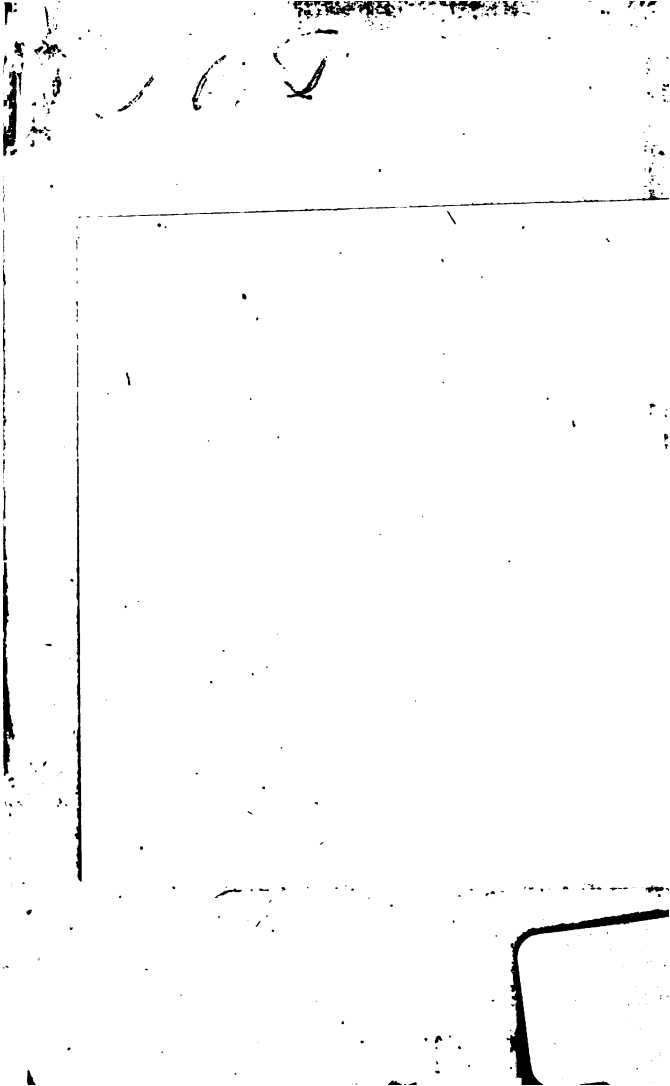
The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas*

arias or *Januarii*, ſcil. *ante*. The day before that, or the thirtieth day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* ſcil. *die ante*; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And ſo on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* ſcil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and ſo back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: the day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec. &c.* and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Biſſextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMque, NOVEMque tricenos;
Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
At ſi biſſextus fuerit; ſuperadditur unus.
Tu primam menſis lucem dic eſſe kalendas,
Sex MAIUS, nonas, OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes poſt idus luces dic eſſe kalendas,
Nomen ſortiri debent a menſe ſequenti.

Thus the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *Auguſt* and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are uſed as Subſtantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is uſed only as a Subſtantive.

FINIS.